

# **HTML**

## ***Primer & Reference Guide***

Copyright

Images, Design & Content: Copyright ©2014 Modem-Help, Ltd..

#### Trademarks

The following trademarks may be used in this document:

- Apple® and Mac OS®, iPhone®, iPad®, iPod® are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries.
- Ethernet™ is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.
- Microsoft®, MS-DOS®, Windows®, Windows NT® and Windows Vista® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Mozilla®, mozilla.org®, Firefox®, Thunderbird®, Bugzilla™, Camino®, Sunbird®, SeaMonkey®, and XUL™, as well as the Mozilla logo, Firefox logo, Thunderbird logo and the red lizard logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation in the United States and/or other countries.
- UNIX® is a registered trademark of UNIX System Laboratories, Incorporated.

Other brands and product names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders. All other logos, trademarks and service marks are the property of their respective owners, where marked or not.

This PDF includes HTML entities, © International Organization for Standardization 1986. Permission to copy in any form is granted for use with conforming SGML systems and applications as defined in ISO 8879, provided this notice is included in all copies.

This PDF is produced with the assistance of the community, in the expectation of helping users to more expertly create HTML pages. It has been cross-checked with the [W3C DTD](#) & other pages & sites. The author is only too human, so do proof-check & report back any errors found so that it can improve.

#### Credits:

For this PDF, you can thank the work of *Alex Kemp*.

26 August 2013

<http://www.modem-help.co.uk/>

#### Contact via forums:

<http://forums.modem-help.co.uk/>

#### Download this PDF:

[non-modem/zigzag/](#)

#### Feedback:

[HTML Reference PDF thread \(Modem-Help forums\)](#)

#### Redistribution:

This PDF may be freely copied and / or re-distributed, on the understanding that the Copyright Notices & Trademark Acknowledgements on this page, plus the links on this & other pages, are not changed. An acknowledgement of source plus link back to Modem-Help would also be greatly appreciated.

#### Version History:

26 August 2013: started

28 April 2014: v1 released:- html 4.01 + css1

# Contents:

<b>Foreword.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Primer.....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Create a Web-page.....</b>	<b>11</b>
Create an empty HTML page.....	11
Open in a Text Editor.....	12
Add <html> Tags.....	13
Add head, body tags.....	13
Add paragraph tags.....	13
Add a Title.....	14
Add a DTD.....	15
Change your language.....	16
utf8.....	16
Text Editor utf8 issues.....	17
Add some style.....	17
A StyleSheet added.....	18
{curly brackets}.....	18
Getting boxy.....	19
<b>Reference Guide:- HTML.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Block-Level Elements.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Inline Elements.....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Other Elements.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Generic Attributes 4.01.....</b>	<b>24</b>
core-attributes:.....	24
language-attributes:.....	24
event-attributes:.....	24
<b>Character Entities.....</b>	<b>25</b>
html2 + Latin-1 Entities.....	26
Mathematical, Greek and Symbolic Entities.....	29
Special Entities.....	33
<b>a - Anchor.....</b>	<b>34</b>
id:.....	35
href:.....	35
name:.....	35
(within-page links):.....	35
<b>abbr - Abbreviation.....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>acronym - Acronym.....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>address - Address.....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>applet - Java applet.....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>area - Image map region.....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>b - Bold text.....</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>base - Document base url.....</b>	<b>42</b>
href:.....	42
absolute v's relative URI:.....	42
applet & object:.....	43
<b>basefont - Base font change.....</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>bdo - BiDi override.....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>big - Large text.....</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>blockquote - Block quotation.....</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>body - Document body.....</b>	<b>48</b>
frameset:.....	48
<b>br - Line break.....</b>	<b>49</b>
clear=(left all right none):.....	49
<b>button - Button.....</b>	<b>50</b>
type="...":.....	51
name:.....	51
value:.....	51
accesskey:.....	51
<b>caption - Table caption.....</b>	<b>52</b>

<b>center</b> - Centred block.....	53
<b>cite</b> - Citation.....	54
<b>code</b> - Computer code.....	55
<b>col</b> - Table column.....	56
<b>colgroup</b> - Table column group.....	57
<b>dd</b> - Definition description.....	58
<b>del</b> - Deleted text.....	59
cite:.....	59
datetime:.....	59
title:.....	59
<b>dfn</b> - Defined term.....	60
<b>dir</b> - Directory list.....	61
compact:.....	61
<b>div</b> - Generic block-level container.....	62
<b>dl</b> - Definition list.....	63
the whole thing:.....	63
<b>doctype</b> - Document Preamble.....	65
Strict vs Transitional.....	66
<b>dt</b> - Definition term.....	67
<b>em</b> - Emphasis.....	68
<b>fieldset</b> - Form control group.....	69
<b>font</b> - Font change.....	70
<b>form</b> - Interactive form.....	71
method:.....	72
enctype:.....	72
<b>frame</b> - Frame.....	73
name:.....	73
<b>frameset</b> - Frameset.....	74
how the W3C frames it:.....	75
<b>h1</b> - Level-one heading.....	76
style:.....	76
<b>h2</b> - Level-two heading.....	78
style:.....	78
<b>h3</b> - Level-three heading.....	79
style:.....	79
<b>h4</b> - Level-four heading.....	80
style:.....	80
<b>h5</b> - Level-five heading.....	81
style:.....	81
<b>h6</b> - Level-six heading.....	82
style:.....	82
<b>head</b> - Document head.....	83
profile:.....	83
<b>hr</b> - Horizontal rule.....	84
<b>html</b> - HTML document.....	85
version:.....	85
(optional tags):.....	85
<b>i</b> - Italic text.....	86
<b>iframe</b> - Inline frame.....	87
<b>img</b> - Inline image.....	88
alt:.....	88
height:.....	89
width:.....	89
<b>input</b> - Form input.....	90
id="...":.....	91
name="...":.....	91
namespaces:.....	91
type="button":.....	91
type="reset":.....	91
type="submit":.....	91
type="checkbox":.....	92
type="radio":.....	92
checked:.....	92
value:.....	92

type="file":.....	92
accept:.....	92
type="hidden":.....	93
type="image":.....	93
alt, usemap + src:.....	93
type="password":.....	93
type="text":.....	93
maxlength + size:.....	93
<b>ins - Inserted text.....</b>	<b>95</b>
cite:.....	95
datetime:.....	95
title:.....	95
<b>isindex - Input prompt.....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>kbd - Text to be input.....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>label - Form field label.....</b>	<b>98</b>
for:.....	99
id:.....	99
<b>legend - Fieldset caption.....</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>li - List item.....</b>	<b>102</b>
type:.....	102
value:.....	102
<b>link - Document relationship.....</b>	<b>103</b>
rel:.....	103
rev:.....	103
rel=apple-touch-icon:.....	104
rel=shortcut icon:.....	104
rel=StyleSheet:.....	104
rel=alternate stylesheet:.....	104
<b>map - Image map.....</b>	<b>105</b>
<b>menu - Menu list.....</b>	<b>106</b>
compact:.....	106
<b>meta - Metadata.....</b>	<b>107</b>
content:.....	107
name:.....	107
name=author:.....	107
name=description:.....	107
name=keywords:.....	107
name=robots:.....	108
http-equiv:.....	108
http-equiv=Content-Type:.....	108
http-equiv=Content-Script-Type:.....	109
http-equiv=Content-Style-Type:.....	109
http-equiv=Refresh:.....	109
<b>noframes - Frames alternate content.....</b>	<b>110</b>
how to hack-off your users:.....	110
a guide to content:.....	110
noframes in 4 Transitional:.....	110
<b>noscript - Alternate script content.....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>object - Object.....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>ol - Ordered list.....</b>	<b>113</b>
type:.....	113
<b>optgroup - Option group.....</b>	<b>114</b>
label:.....	115
<b>option - Menu option.....</b>	<b>116</b>
selected:.....	116
value:.....	116
<b>p - Paragraph.....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>param - Object parameter.....</b>	<b>118</b>
id:.....	118
name:.....	118
<b>pre - Pre-formatted text.....</b>	<b>119</b>
width:.....	119
<b>q - Short Quotation.....</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>s - Strike-through text.....</b>	<b>121</b>

<b>samp</b> - Sample output.....	122
<b>script</b> - Client-side script.....	123
<b>select</b> - Option selector.....	124
multiple:.....	124
name:.....	124
size:.....	124
<b>small</b> - Small text.....	125
<b>span</b> - Generic inline container.....	126
<b>strike</b> - Strike-through text.....	127
<b>strong</b> - Strong emphasis.....	128
<b>style</b> - Embedded style sheet.....	129
media:.....	129
title:.....	129
type:.....	130
<b>sub</b> - Subscript.....	131
<b>sup</b> - Superscript.....	132
<b>table</b> - Table.....	133
align:.....	134
bgcolor:.....	134
border:.....	134
frame:.....	134
cellpadding:.....	134
cellspacing:.....	134
width:.....	134
The whole thing:.....	135
<b>tbody</b> - Table body.....	137
<b>td</b> - Table data cell.....	138
abbr:.....	139
axis:.....	139
headers:.....	139
scope:.....	139
colspan:.....	139
rowspan:.....	139
<b>textarea</b> - Multi-line text input.....	140
cols:.....	141
rows:.....	141
<b>tfoot</b> - Table foot.....	142
<b>th</b> - Table header cell.....	143
abbr:.....	144
axis:.....	144
headers:.....	144
scope:.....	144
colspan:.....	144
rowspan:.....	144
<b>thead</b> - Table head.....	145
<b>title</b> - Document title.....	146
<b>tr</b> - Table row.....	147
<b>tt</b> - Teletype text.....	148
<b>u</b> - Underlined text.....	149
<b>ul</b> - Unordered list.....	150
compact:.....	150
type:.....	150
The whole thing:.....	151
<b>var</b> - Variable.....	152
<b>Reference Guide:- CSS</b> .....	153
<b>Introduction</b> .....	154
Attaching Style/StyleSheets to a html document.....	155
css Layout Model.....	167
<b>Box Properties</b> .....	182
border properties:.....	182
border-width properties:.....	182
margin properties:.....	182
padding properties:.....	182

<b>Classification Properties</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>Colour &amp; Background Properties</b>	<b>184</b>
Notes	184
<b>Font Properties</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>Pseudo-classes &amp; Pseudo-elements</b>	<b>186</b>
<b>Text Properties</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>Units</b>	<b>188</b>
Color Units	188
Length Units	190
Percentage Units	191
URLs	191
<b>Property Value Syntax</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>CSS Properties A - Z</b>	<b>193</b>
1st-line pseudo-element	194
1st-letter pseudo-element	195
Anchor pseudo-classes	196
background	197
background-attachment	198
background-color	199
background-image	200
background-position	201
background-repeat	203
border	204
border-bottom	205
border-bottom-width	206
border-color	207
border-left	208
border-left-width	209
border-right	210
border-right-width	211
border-style	212
border-top	213
border-top-width	214
border-width	215
clear	216
color	217
display	218
float	219
font	220
font-family	221
font-size	222
font-style	223
font-variant	224
font-weight	225
height	226
letter-spacing	227
line-height	228
list-style	229
list-style-image	230
list-style-position	231
list-style-type	232
margin	233
margin-bottom	234
margin-left	235
margin-right	236
margin-top	237
padding	238
padding-bottom	239
padding-left	240
padding-right	241
padding-top	242
text-align	243
text-decoration	244
text-indent	245

---

text-transform.....	246
vertical-align.....	247
width.....	248
white-space.....	249
word-spacing.....	250
<b>Miscellany.....</b>	<b>251</b>
Quirks Mode.....	252
Column Layouts, css1.....	254
Text grids using only css.....	255
Accurate Superscript & Subscripts.....	257
Google Guidelines for html & css.....	260



# Foreword

In August 2013 Carly & Martin—the guiding minds & hands behind the regeneration of the ZigZag fields in St. Anns—took everyone into (what used to be, now long abandoned) *The Beacon* public house & said “*If we want, this can be a community space*”. My thought was:- ‘what could I do?’...

The previous Christmas I had given my grandchildren a cut-out from The Times (the London newspaper). It was an ‘easy-howto-code-HTML’. To my surprise Micaela was enthusiastic; Mickey was 12 and had been into ballet since she was 3; she was the last person that I thought would want to know how to code HTML. I clearly needed to update my thinking.

Back at the *The Beacon* I asked the local kids:- would they be interested in learning how to code? It did seem that they were more interested in learning “*How to hack*”, but at least one adult was also enthusiastic, so I put my brains into action, and this PDF is the first result.

I could not find a comprehensive reference for HTML nor CSS so decided to produce my own. This first version is HTML4.01 + CSS1. From one point of view that is prehistoric but, as HTML5 isn’t even ratified yet, it is also the most up-to-date HTML that we have got. CSS2,3 will follow in a later version.

I hope that you find it useful.

Alex Kemp  
27 April 2014



# Create a Web-page

## You will need:

1. A plain-text Editor
2. A web Browser.

Any text editor will do, and any browser, under any OS; you do NOT need to be connected to the Internet. The examples below are in [TextPad](#) + Firefox v23 under Windows XP.

## Create an empty HTML page

There are many ways to do this; the picture at right shows just one.

Start with a click from the right mouse-button on the Desktop (or in an Explorer window) under Windows XP.

Pressing <Enter> will give a new document called 'New Text Document.txt'.

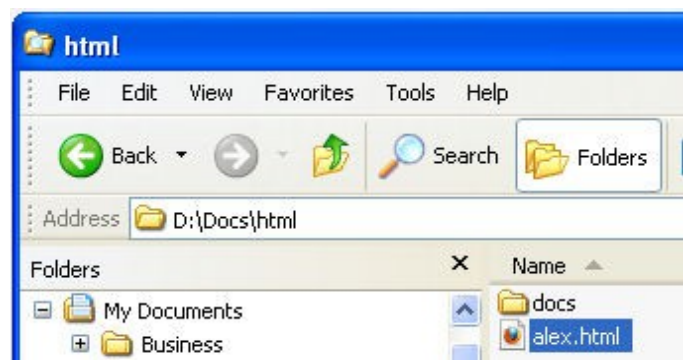
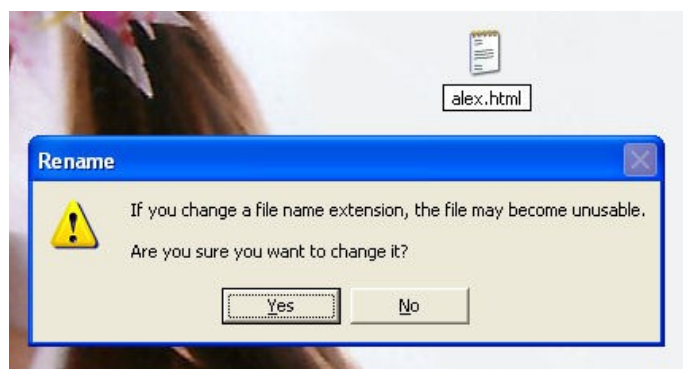
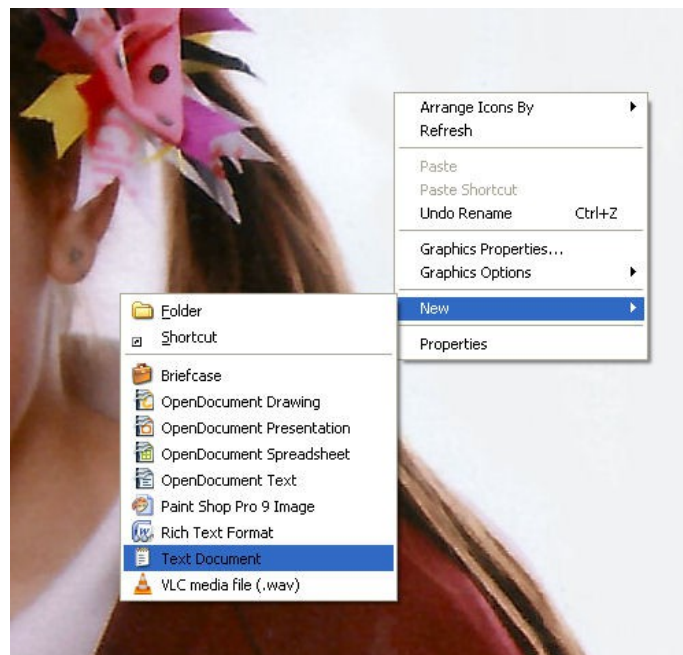
Now change the document name to: '`<your-name>.html`'.

Windows will now complain, because you have changed the document name from 'something.txt' to 'something.html'.

You are allowed to swear (but only under your breath if others are in the room).

Press <Yes>.

Here the new file has been put somewhere easy to find:



## Open in a Text Editor

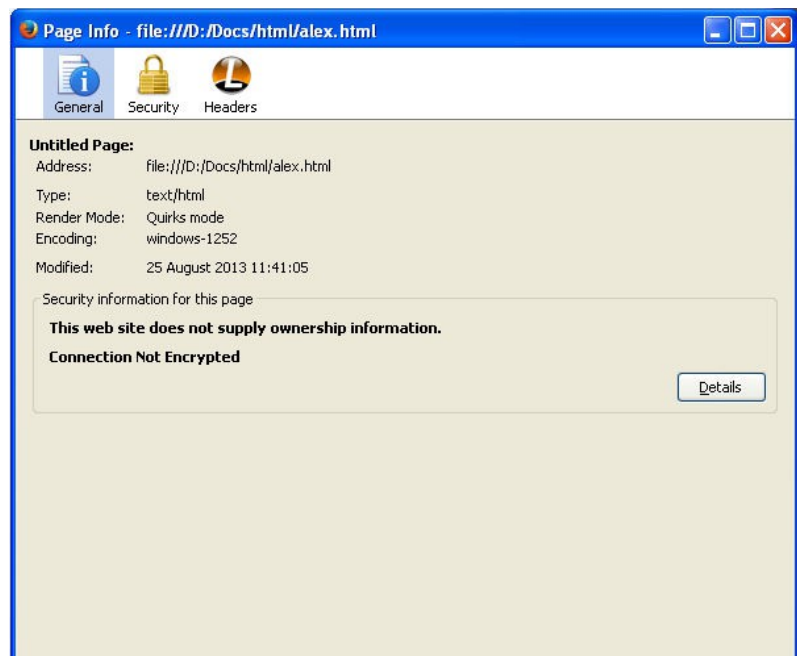
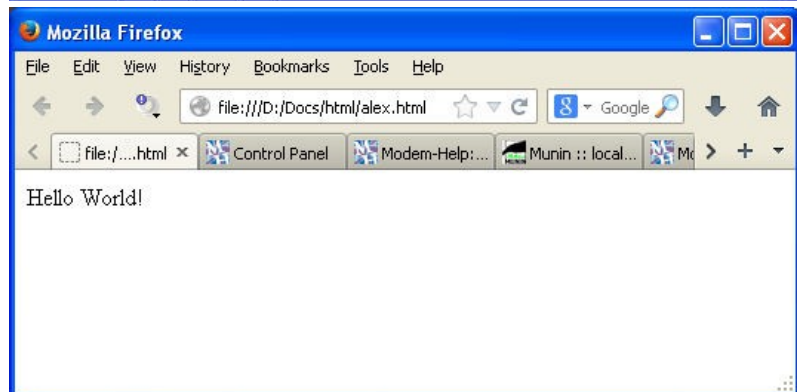
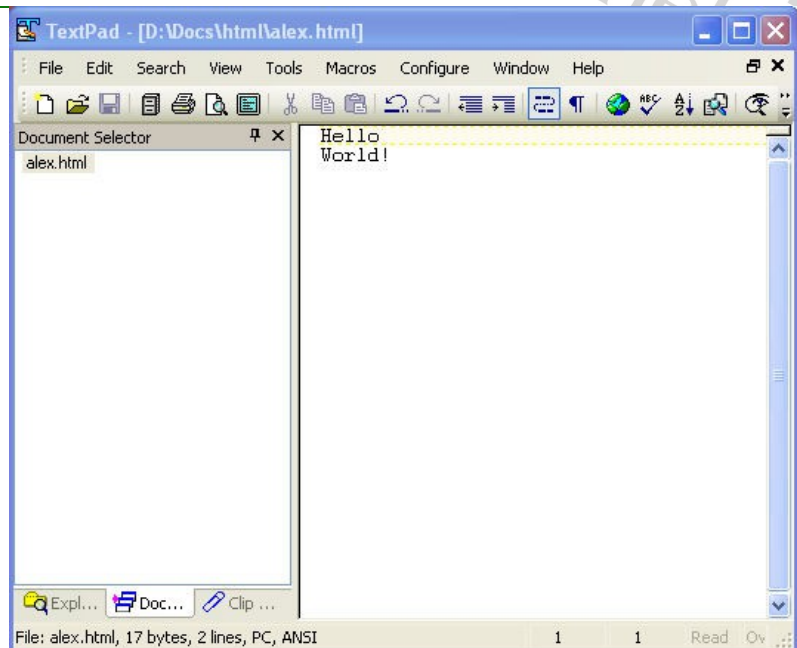
Type in the words as shown at right ('Hello World!') – notice that each word is on a separate line (you can also try putting more words in, and more than one space between each word)

Save the file, then open in a Web Browser.

(TextPad has a 'View|In Web Browser' menu option, whilst Firefox has a 'File|Open File...' menu option)

Well done! That is your very first Web Page (that was easier than you thought).

We have some distance to go, yet. If you right-click in the Firefox window & choose 'View Page Info' you will see the dialog as at right; the important line at this moment is "*Render Mode: Quirks mode*". We do not want that in any situation, no sir, but it will be a little while before it changes.



## Add <html> Tags

The 'm' in 'html' stands for "markup", and as at right you should add a set of 'html' markup tags to your document.

These tags tell the browser that what follows is HTML (an 'xml' tag would indicate the XML language, etc.).

(you can save these changes & refresh the Browser, but there will be zero change at this point)

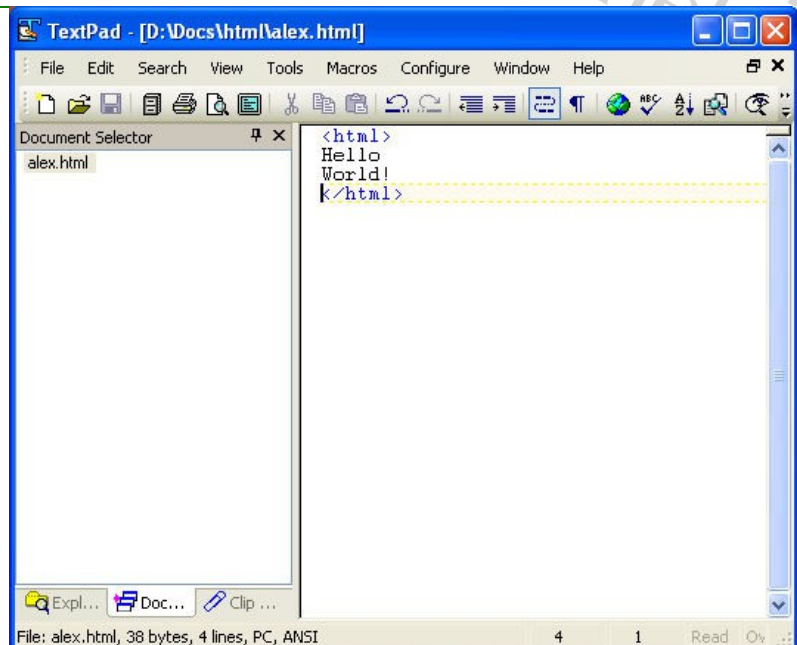
## Add head, body tags

Each HTML document should contain both a *HEAD* plus a *BODY* section.

The <head> tags immediately follow the opening html tag, whilst the <body> tags surround the text entered earlier.

## Add paragraph tags

These are placed to surround the body-text entered originally.

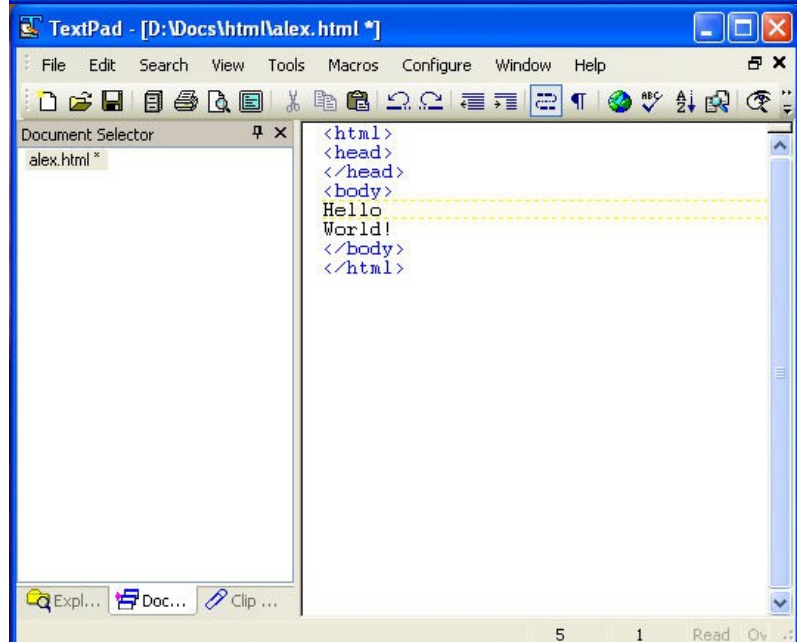


TextPad - [D:\Docs\html\alex.html]

```
File Edit Search View Tools Macros Configure Window Help
<html>
Hello
World!
</html>
```

Document Selector: alex.html

File: alex.html, 38 bytes, 4 lines, PC, ANSI

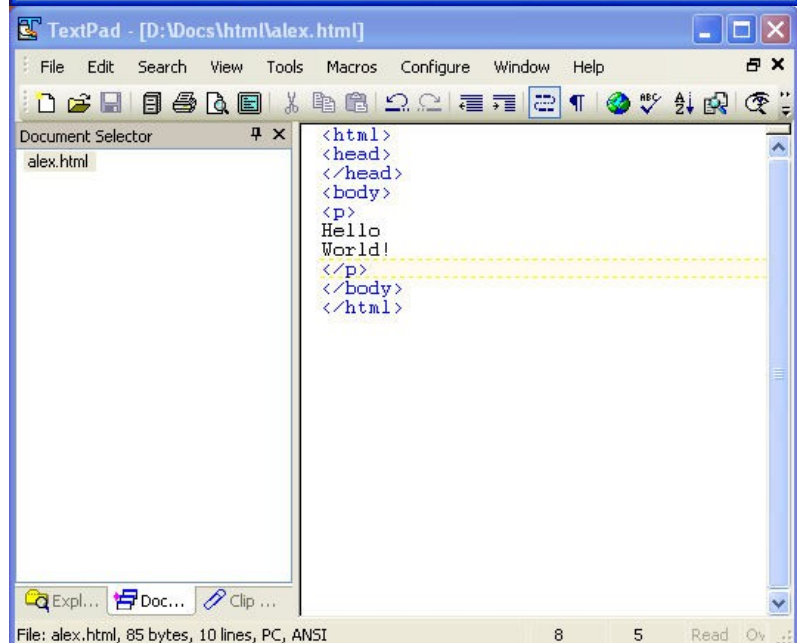


TextPad - [D:\Docs\html\alex.html \*]

```
File Edit Search View Tools Macros Configure Window Help
<html>
<head>
</head>
<body>
Hello
World!
</body>
</html>
```

Document Selector: alex.html \*

File: alex.html, 51 bytes, 5 lines, PC, ANSI



TextPad - [D:\Docs\html\alex.html]

```
File Edit Search View Tools Macros Configure Window Help
<html>
<head>
</head>
<body>
<p>
Hello
World!
</p>
</body>
</html>
```

Document Selector: alex.html

File: alex.html, 85 bytes, 10 lines, PC, ANSI

## Add a Title

Although most of the sections within the HTML head are not normally directly seen, the *title* section is the major exception to this rule.

Once again, save the text file & refresh the Browser window:

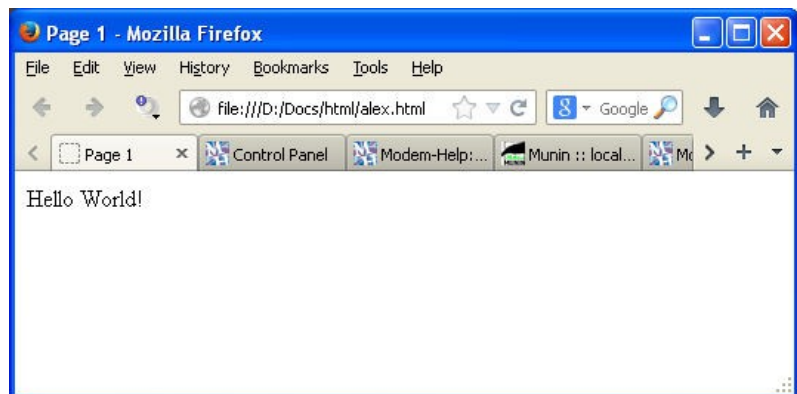
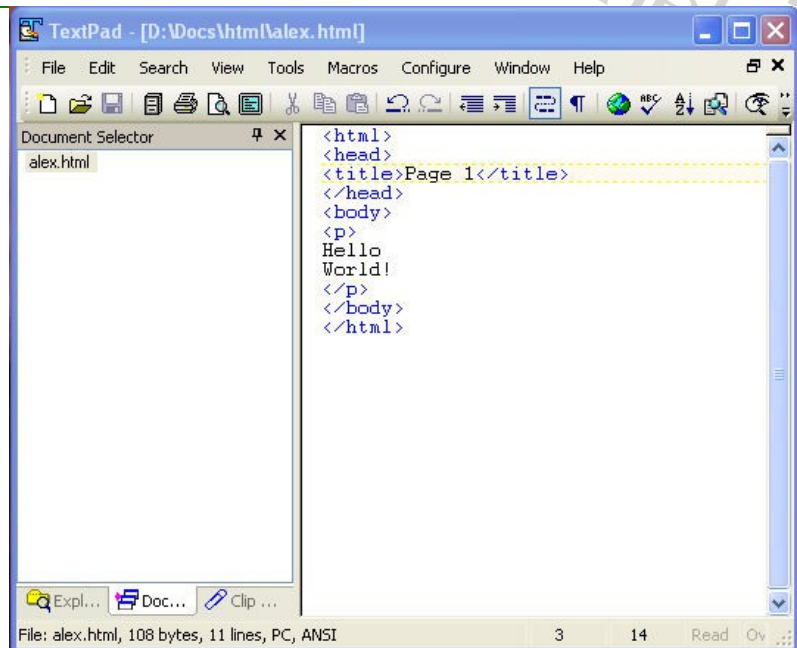
how to refresh:

- press 'f5' key, or
- press circ arrow (far right, address-bar)

how to force-refresh:

- press <Ctrl> + 'f5' key (both keys at same time), or
- press <Shift> + circ arrow (both keys at same time)

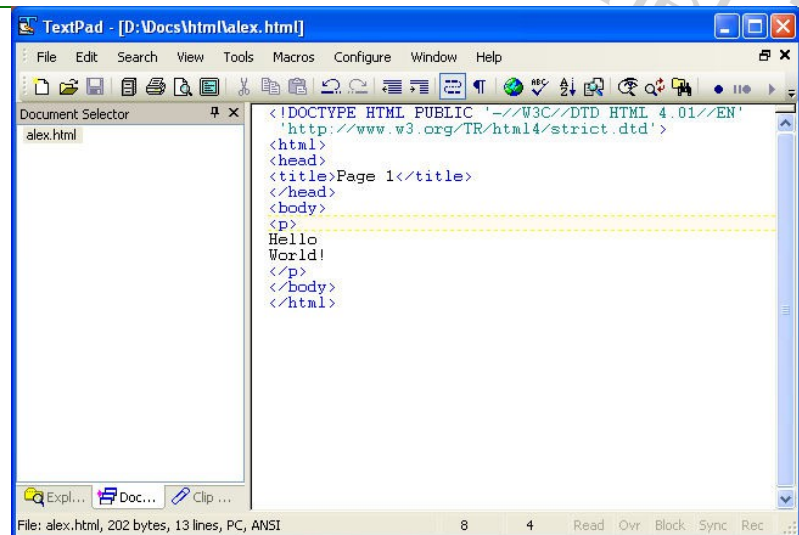
(the difference between 'refresh' & 'force-refresh' is that the latter does not allow the local Browser cache to be used)



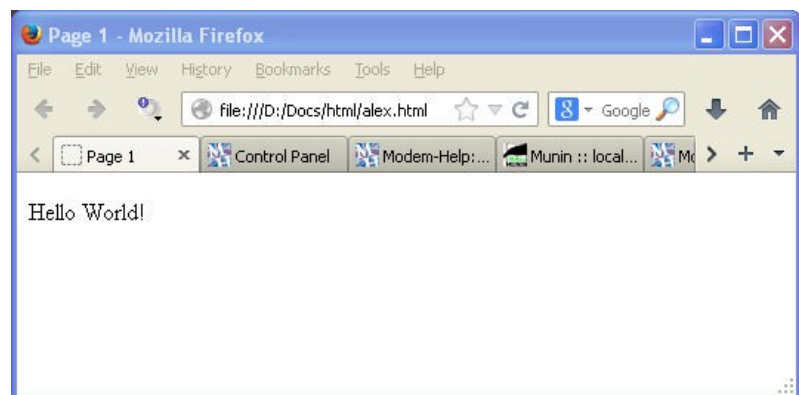


## Add a DTD

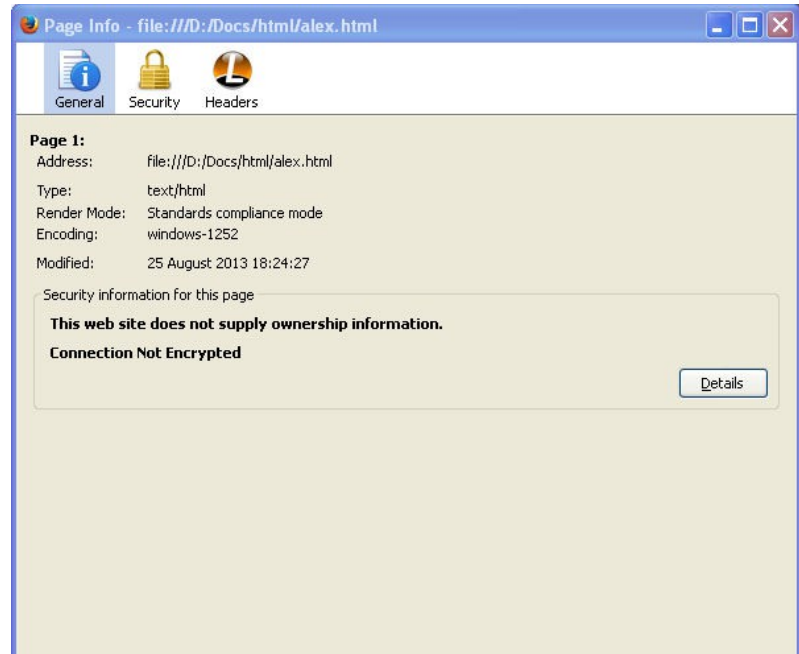
This is a *Document Type Declaration (DTD)*, and it declares to the Browser's parser as to which specific type of XML/SGML document this is (an HTML document is one of the *Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML)* family of markup languages).



If you save the file, then refresh the Browser you will see a small change in the window (the text moves down a little). The default Style Sheet is the reason for the text movement – that will be explained later.



Importantly, the *Page Info* has also finally changed. According to this statement, page display for all elements should now be perfectly reliable ("*Render Mode: Standards compliance mode*"). Hooray!



Now look at the next line: ("*Encoding: windows-1252*"). That is because *TextPad* was set to save the file as:

- Code set: ANSI
- File type: PC

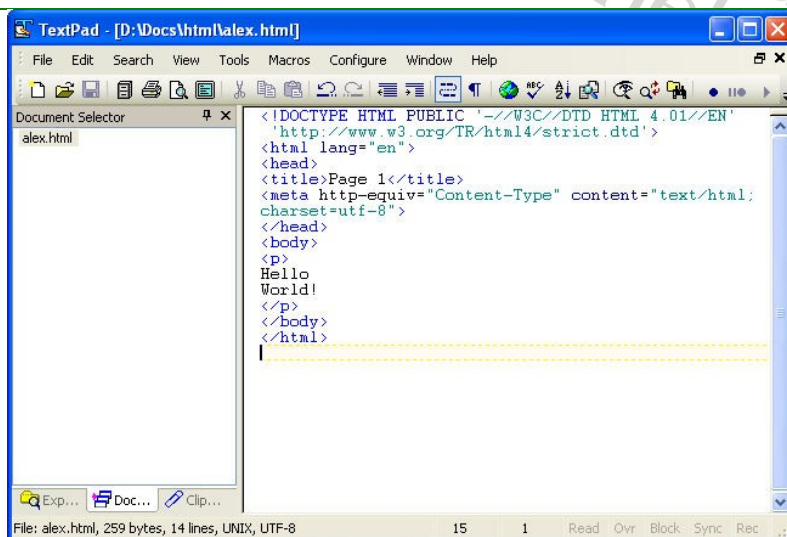
...plus my Windows XP is set for the windows-1252 [code-page](#) ("*ANSI Latin 1; Western European (Windows)*") (yours may well be different).

Well, that all sounds very complicated, and it is! What is *easy* to understand is that saving in a Windows' format may be difficult for users of Linux, Mac & other computers, plus saving in a "*Western European*" format may be difficult for people in a different region. Which they are, and it is easy to fix both, so let's now do something about that.

## Change your language

You can see at right that we have added 'lang="en"' to the `html` element (which defines the default language for the whole document).

We have also added a mysterious `meta` element in the `head`; this defines the `charset` of the content to be 'utf-8'. More on that later. The `meta` statement is on one line (2 in the screen-shot), and 2 actual lines should also be fine in the html.

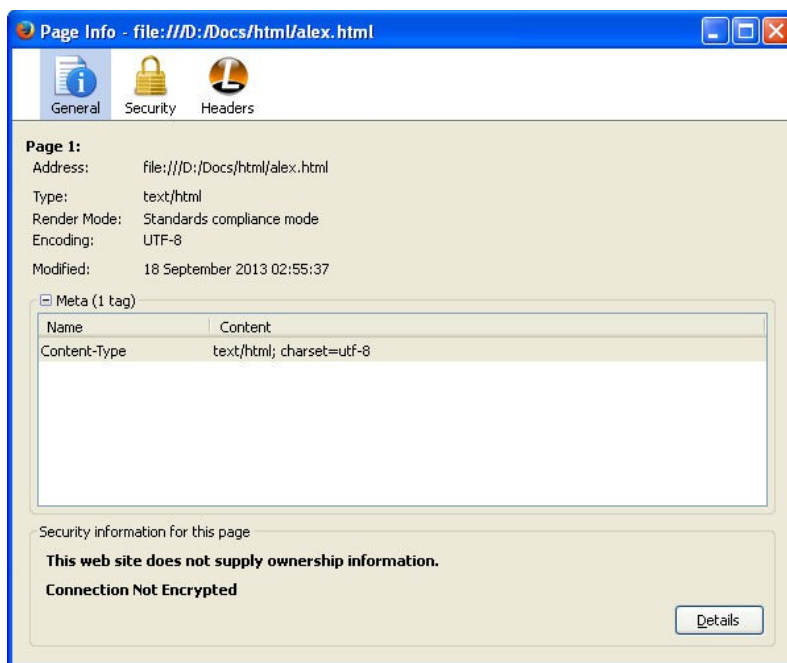


```

<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN"
'http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd'>
<html lang="en">
<head>
<title>Page 1</title>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html;
charset=utf-8">
</head>
<body>
<p>
Hello
World!
</p>
</body>
</html>
  
```

The *Page Information* has now also changed; the 'Encoding' is now 'UTF-8', and Firefox also shows us the *Meta* info from the file.

I also changed the file format when I saved it in TextPad to be 'UNIX' and 'UTF-8'. The last one does not actually change anything to the file nor it's display (for the geeks: all the current characters are identical to 7-bit ASCII, which itself is identical to those same characters in UTF8). The first makes the file a little bit smaller (geeks: line-endings change from '<CR><LF>' to just '<LF>').



## UTF8

UTF8 is a rather wonderful & clever charset that will let you write *any character from any language in the world* (no kidding). On the up-side, it means that, from now on, you can write in your own language (content-only: all the HTML elements are US-ASCII, and no other *charset* must be used for them), and that language can be any of the hundreds of languages that exist on the surface of this planet (and one or two that do not – yes, *Klingons*, I'm looking at you). Importantly, in 2008 utf-8 became [the most-used charset on the web](#) (as reported by Google), which means that your web-work will be future-proofed. All modern browsers can read & display utf-8 correctly, often not true for other applications on the OS, and especially under Windows.



The main downside is that you have to make sure that your text-editor will allow you to write & display in plain-text utf-8. It is mostly a setup issue, though Windows users may have problems (TextPad does not handle utf-8 properly) (I shall only be producing ASCII text). Another feature to beware of is to make sure that you are using a *Plain-Text* UTF8 editor. Many editors—such as the one that I am producing this PDF on—will introduce codes into the text (notice that all the “quotations” use *curly* quotes, as just one example) (UTF8 has *curly* quotes but your editor may not be using them). This is also often a setup issue, and can sometimes be fixed by a plain-text *Save* option.

The final point to note here is that nothing has changed in the browser display due to our changes. Our future options have opened up, but nothing else has changed.

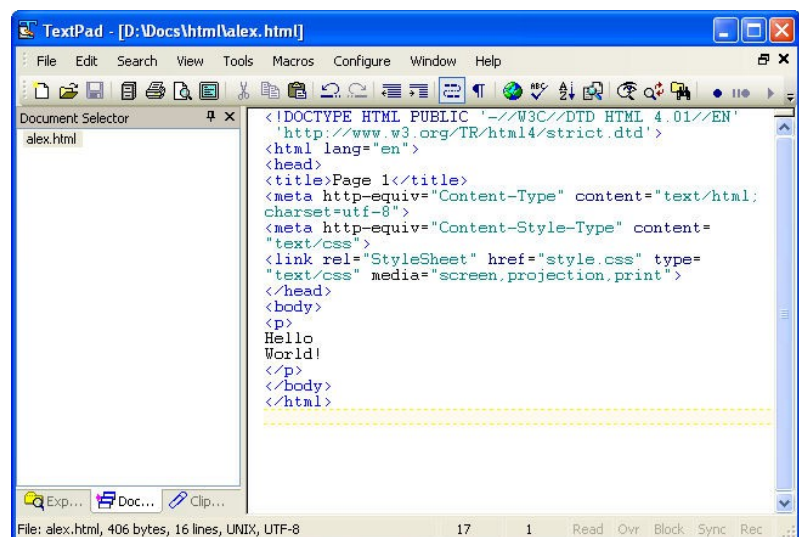
## Add some style

What we have done so far is good but a little... dull. And I’m not talking just about the content (that is up to you) – it is how it looks; the *presentation* of that content. In a (HTML) word, the *style*.

10 or 20 years ago you would have been advised at this point to begin littering your html markup with FONT & COLOR attributes. No longer. This is the 21<sup>st</sup> Century, and today we do it with *style*.

We need 2 additions to the html file in this, your first web-page (can you spot them?):-

1. Another of those mystery *meta* elements, which always go in the *head*. This one is to declare the ‘Content-Style-Type’ *type*.
2. The file that will provide *StyleSheet* information for the entire file, which is done with a *link* element (also in the *head*).



Have you noticed what’s missing? Well, yes, it’s a good idea to also have the *StyleSheet* file in place; nothing will happen to the display until it is there. You may think at first that there is little that we can do with this file as it currently stands; after all, there is only “Hello World!” inside of a *p* element. But you would be wrong! (you have forgotten the *body*, which is *always* there—even if not not defined—and that governs all sorts of things).

## A StyleSheet added

Be warned! *StyleSheets* can become compulsive, because they are so much fun! The trick with *StyleSheets* is to first get one with all the *style* for all the elements that you may use—and one that you like, obviously—and put the commands into the *head* to load it, and then forget it. Otherwise, you can spend hours & hours & *hours* messing about. Or perhaps that's just me... Save the StyleSheet below as plain-text in the same dir as your html file.

This one starts with a comment. Comments begin with a *slash dot* (*'/\*'*) and finish with a *dot slash* (*'\*/'*). *Everything* in between—including tabs, new-lines and the *slash dot & dot slash* is removed by the browser from the stylesheet before use.

Next is the *body*, and then the *p* element style code. Then follow some elements that we do not yet have in our page but may do.

Here is some brief info on *StyleSheets* to help you begin to play with this one:-

### { curly brackets }

A pair of curly brackets (*'{'*) following an element mean that *all* the style-statements between the brackets apply to that element. The semi-colon (*':'*) at the end of each statement is *required*; the newlines & spaces are optional.

2 elements together (eg *'p input'*) apply only when the second one is contained inside the first (an *input* inside a *p* element). Then, those *style* statements override both any *p* style *and* any bare *input* style. Comma-separated elements (*'p input,option'*) means *style* applies to both *"p input"* + *"p option"*. Be warned: style can get *really* complicated.

```
/* style.css
   StyleSheet for html Primers

   Alex Kemp
*/
body {
    width: 100%;
    background: #ffffe8; /* ne6mac default is grey
*/
    color: #000000;
    font-family: helvetica, sans-serif;
    margin: 0; /* ie default !=0 */
    padding: 0; /* Opera default !=0 */
}
p {
    font-size: 1.0em;
    line-height: 1.8em;
    margin: 1.2px 0px 1.2px 0px;
}
p input,option,select,textarea { /* ie pc textarea
always in serif monospace font, regardless */
    font-size: 1.0em;
    line-height: 1.3em;
}
div {
    background: white;
    color: black;
    padding: 0 3px;
}
body div {
    border: 0.74em solid #ffffe8;
}
/*typography*/
a {
    background: none transparent;
    TEXT-DECORATION: none;
}
a:link { color: #0000ff; }
a:visited { color: #e105ba; }
a:active { color: #ff0000; }
a:hover { color: #ff0000; TEXT-
DECORATION: underline; }
acronym { /* borrowed from php.net */
    border-bottom: 1px dashed #00cc00;
}
/* -- Now instructions purely for printing --
essentially, turn background to white -- */
@media print {
body {
    background: white;
    color: #000000;
}
body div {
    border: 0.74em solid white;
}
```

The W3C—the folks responsible for specifying both HTML *and* STYLE—have specified a ‘Box Model’ that is, frankly, nuts. Well, it’s all a touch silly; Microsoft tried to fix it with [Internet Explorer 5 on the PC](#), but no-one else would accept that, and now we are all stuck with it. Let’s see if I can make sense of it for you...

Let’s imagine my grandchildren have decided to post me a present (yes please!) and here it is: a green box with something nice in the middle. Sensibly, they have put it in a brown cardboard box with lots of protective wrapping.



Now, this is how a *StyleSheet* specifies the **green box** in the middle; it says that the green box has a *border*, a *margin* & a *padding* (plus a *width* & *height*):

- border:
  - The border is the green of the green-box itself. It has:
  - width (a **length** unit, or: thin | medium | thick)
  - style (none | dotted | dashed | solid | double | groove | ridge | inset | outset)
  - **color**
- margin:
  - Margin is the (pink) space *outside* the green box, between it and the brown box that contains it. It has:
  - (just a value) (a **length** unit)
- padding:
  - Padding is the (blue) space *inside* the green box, between it & the yellow contents. It has:
  - (just a value) (a **length** unit)

That all seems perfectly reasonable, and you are probably wondering why I called the W3C ‘Box Model’ “nuts”. The answer comes when I ask you a question:

- What is the width of the green box?

If your answer is: “*the distance from the left to the right of the outside of the green box*”, or perhaps if you are trying to be clever: “*the width of the inside of the brown box minus the green-box margin*” then I would agree with you. But the W3C does not. The W3C answer is:

- The width of the contents (the yellow space).

Thus, for ‘green-box width:’ you would put the length of the content-space. For the W3C “padding and border are to be added to the width” in order to find the dimensions of the green box. One of these days [I may get over that](#), but for the last 15+ years I’ve thought that they are nuts. However, none of us have any choice, we must *all* go nuts the W3C way.

PS

The brown box also has a *border*, a *margin* & a *padding*, but I’ve ignored all that so far (as if they are all zero) to try to give everyone a chance to first understand the basic principles.

---

## **Reference Guide:- HTML**

## Block-Level Elements

**Description:** Most of the elements permitted within the html body are designated to have a *Content Model* that is either Block-Level or [Inline](#). That affects how a browser will render them upon the canvas of the *display device* (a monitor, mobile, projector, etc.).

A Block-Level element is rendered according to the W3C Box Model. In brief, it normally begins upon a newline, but see the [Box Model](#) for full details.

**Elements:**

<a href="#">address</a>	<a href="#">blockquote</a>	
<a href="#">button</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">caption</a>		
<a href="#">dd</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">del</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">div</a>		
<a href="#">dl</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">dt</a>	<a href="#">fieldset</a>	<a href="#">form</a>
<a href="#">frameset</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">h1</a>	<a href="#">h2</a>	<a href="#">h3</a>
<a href="#">h4</a>	<a href="#">h5</a>	<a href="#">h6</a>
<a href="#">hr</a>		
<a href="#">ins</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">legend</a>	<a href="#">li</a>	
<a href="#">map</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">noframes</a>	<a href="#">noscript</a>	
<a href="#">object</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">ol</a>	<a href="#">p</a>	<a href="#">pre</a>
<a href="#">script</a>	block or inline; when inline must NOT contain block-level elements	
<a href="#">table</a>		
<a href="#">tbody</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">td</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">tfoot</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">th</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">thead</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">tr</a>	(can contain block-level elements)	
<a href="#">ul</a>		

## Inline Elements

**Description:** Most of the elements permitted within the html body are designated to have a *Content Model* that is either **Block-Level** or **Inline**. That affects how a browser will render them upon the canvas of the *display device* (a monitor, mobile, projector, etc.).

An Inline element is rendered as part of the flow of text, with the element beginning at the next character position within that flow.

**Elements:**

a	abbr	acronym
b	bdo	big
br		
button	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
cite	code	
del	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
dfn	em	img
input		
ins	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
kbd	label	
map	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
object	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
optgroup	option	q
samp		
script	block or inline; when inline (within another inline element or a p ) must NOT contain block-level elements	
select	small	span
strong	sub	sup
textarea	tt	u
var		

# Other Elements

*Description:* There are some in every gathering!

Most HTML elements are either [Block-Level](#), [Inline](#) or can be either; this page gathers together those that are neither. Most of this miscellany are elements that, for one reason or another, are not rendered directly upon the canvas.

*Elements:*

---

[area](#)

---

[base](#)

---

[body](#)

---

[col](#)

---

[colgroup](#)

---

[doctype](#)

---

[frame](#)

---

[head](#)

---

[html](#)

---

[link](#)

---

[meta](#)

---

[param](#)

---

[style](#)

---

[title](#)

---

# Generic Attributes 4.01

**Description:** These attributes are (mostly) available for every element. See the individual element page for specifics.

### core-attributes:

id	document-wide unique id (new to HTML4)
class	space-separated list of classes (new to HTML4)
style	associated style info (new to HTML4)
title	advisory title (normally rendered in a visual browser as a 'tooltip')

### language-attributes:

lang	<a href="#">2-char language codes</a>
dir	(ltr rtl) direction for weak/neutral text

### event-attributes:

onclick	a pointer button was clicked
ondblclick	a pointer button was double clicked
onmousedown	a pointer button was pressed down
onmouseup	a pointer button was released
onmouseover	a pointer was moved onto
onmousemove	a pointer was moved within
onmouseout	a pointer was moved away
onkeypress	a key was pressed and released
onkeydown	a key was pressed down
onkeyup	a key was released



# Character Entities

*Description:* These are academic if you use the UTF-8 *charset*.

HTML2.0 introduced ‘&quot;’, ‘&amp;’, ‘&lt;’ and ‘&gt;’. HTML3.2 added Latin-1 *entities*; these are US-ASCII (7-bit character) short-codes to represent 8-bit characters in the Latin-1 charset. HTML4 extended those with “Mathematical, Greek and Symbolic” + “Special” entities. Browser support was always patchy (apart from the original HTML2 foursome), and now UTF-8 allows entry of *any* character directly (but you may need to know what these entities are).

*Entity tables:*

- [HTML2 + Latin-1](#)
- [Mathematical, Greek and Symbolic](#)
- [Special](#)

*Notes for the tables:*

- ‘Alpha’

The entity representation is (case-sensitive):

`&Alpha;`

So, prepend ‘&’ and append ‘;’. An example is:

`&nbsp;`  
(a non-breaking space)

- ‘Dec’  
(decimal) The entity representation is:

`&#Dec;`

So, prepend ‘&#’ and append ‘;’. An example is:

`&#160;`  
(a non-breaking space)

- ‘Hex’  
(hexadecimal) The entity representation is (case-insensitive):

`&#xHex;`

So, prepend ‘&#x’ and append ‘;’. An example is:

`&#xa0;`  
(a non-breaking space)

‘&#xao;’ == ‘&#x00ao;’ == ‘U+00Ao’ (the unicode/UTF-8 code)

# Reference Guide:- HTML

## HTML2 + Latin-1 Entities

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>quot</b>	034	0022	quotation mark	"
<b>amp</b>	038	0026	ampersand	&
<b>lt</b>	060	003c	left angle-bracket ('less than' symbol)	<
<b>gt</b>	062	003e	right angle-bracket ('greater than' symbol)	>
<b>nbsp</b>	160	00a0	no-break space = non-breaking space	
<b>iexcl</b>	161	00a1	inverted exclamation mark	¡
<b>cent</b>	162	00a2	cent sign	¢
<b>pound</b>	163	00a3	pound sign	£
<b>curren</b>	164	00a4	currency sign	¤
<b>yen</b>	165	00a5	yen sign = yuan sign	¥
<b>brvbar</b>	166	00a6	broken bar = broken vertical bar	
<b>sect</b>	167	00a7	section sign	§
<b>uml</b>	168	00a8	diaeresis = spacing diaeresis	¨
<b>copy</b>	169	00a9	copyright sign	©
<b>ordf</b>	170	00aa	feminine ordinal indicator	ª
<b>laquo</b>	171	00ab	left-pointing double angle quotation mark = left pointing guillemet	«
<b>not</b>	172	00ac	not sign	¬
<b>shy</b>	173	00ad	soft hyphen = discretionary hyphen	
<b>reg</b>	174	00ae	registered sign = registered trade mark sign	®
<b>macr</b>	175	00af	macron = spacing macron = overline = APL overbar	¯
<b>deg</b>	176	00b0	degree sign	°
<b>plusmn</b>	177	00b1	plus-minus sign = plus-or-minus sign	±
<b>sup2</b>	178	00b2	superscript two = superscript digit two = squared	²
<b>sup3</b>	179	00b3	superscript three = superscript digit three = cubed	³
<b>acute</b>	180	00b4	acute accent = spacing acute	´
<b>micro</b>	181	00b5	micro sign	µ
<b>para</b>	182	00b6	pilcrow sign = paragraph sign	¶
<b>middot</b>	183	00b7	middle dot = Georgian comma = Greek middle dot	·
<b>cedil</b>	184	00b8	cedilla = spacing cedilla	¸
<b>sup1</b>	185	00b9	superscript one = superscript digit one	¹
<b>ordm</b>	186	00ba	masculine ordinal indicator	º
<b>raquo</b>	187	00bb	right-pointing double angle quotation mark = right pointing guillemet	»
<b>frac14</b>	188	00bc	vulgar fraction one quarter = fraction one quarter	¼
<b>frac12</b>	189	00bd	vulgar fraction one half = fraction one half	½
<b>frac34</b>	190	00be	vulgar fraction three quarters = fraction three quarters	¾
<b>iquest</b>	191	00bf	inverted question mark = turned question mark	¿
<b>Agrave</b>	192	00c0	latin capital letter A with grave = latin capital letter A grave	À
<b>Aacute</b>	193	00c1	latin capital letter A with acute	Á

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>Acirc</b>	194	ooc2	latin capital letter A with circumflex	Â
<b>Atilde</b>	195	ooc3	latin capital letter A with tilde	Ã
<b>Auml</b>	196	ooc4	latin capital letter A with diaeresis	Ä
<b>Aring</b>	197	ooc5	latin capital letter A with ring above = latin capital letter A ring	Å
<b>AElig</b>	198	ooc6	latin capital letter AE = latin capital ligature AE	Æ
<b>Ccedil</b>	199	ooc7	latin capital letter C with cedilla	Ç
<b>Egrave</b>	200	ooc8	latin capital letter E with grave	È
<b>Eacute</b>	201	ooc9	latin capital letter E with acute	É
<b>Ecirc</b>	202	ooca	latin capital letter E with circumflex	Ê
<b>Euml</b>	203	oocb	latin capital letter E with diaeresis	Ë
<b>Igrave</b>	204	oocc	latin capital letter I with grave	Ì
<b>Iacute</b>	205	oocd	latin capital letter I with acute	Í
<b>Icirc</b>	206	ooce	latin capital letter I with circumflex	Î
<b>Iuml</b>	207	oocf	latin capital letter I with diaeresis	Ï
<b>ETH</b>	208	oodo	latin capital letter ETH	Ð
<b>Ntilde</b>	209	ood1	latin capital letter N with tilde	Ñ
<b>Ograve</b>	210	ood2	latin capital letter O with grave	Ò
<b>Oacute</b>	211	ood3	latin capital letter O with acute	Ó
<b>Ocirc</b>	212	ood4	latin capital letter O with circumflex	Ô
<b>Otilde</b>	213	ood5	latin capital letter O with tilde	Õ
<b>Ouml</b>	214	ood6	latin capital letter O with diaeresis	Ö
<b>times</b>	215	ood7	multiplication sign	×
<b>Oslash</b>	216	ood8	latin capital letter O with stroke = latin capital letter O slash	Ø
<b>Ugrave</b>	217	ood9	latin capital letter U with grave	Ù
<b>Uacute</b>	218	ooda	latin capital letter U with acute	Ú
<b>Ucirc</b>	219	oodb	latin capital letter U with circumflex	Û
<b>Uuml</b>	220	oodc	latin capital letter U with diaeresis	Ü
<b>Yacute</b>	221	oodd	latin capital letter Y with acute	Ý
<b>THORN</b>	222	oode	latin capital letter THORN	Þ
<b>szlig</b>	223	oodf	latin small letter sharp s = ess-zed	ß
<b>agrave</b>	224	ooe0	latin small letter a with grave = latin small letter a grave	à
<b>aacute</b>	225	ooe1	latin small letter a with acute	á
<b>acirc</b>	226	ooe2	latin small letter a with circumflex	â
<b>atilde</b>	227	ooe3	latin small letter a with tilde	ã
<b>auml</b>	228	ooe4	latin small letter a with diaeresis	ä
<b>aring</b>	229	ooe5	latin small letter a with ring above = latin small letter a ring	å
<b>aelig</b>	230	ooe6	latin small letter ae = latin small ligature ae	æ
<b>ccedil</b>	231	ooe7	latin small letter c with cedilla	ç
<b>egrave</b>	232	ooe8	latin small letter e with grave	è
<b>eacute</b>	233	ooe9	latin small letter e with acute	é
<b>ecirc</b>	234	ooea	latin small letter e with circumflex	ê
<b>euml</b>	235	ooeb	latin small letter e with diaeresis	ë
<b>igrave</b>	236	ooec	latin small letter i with grave	ì

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>iacute</b>	237	ooed	latin small letter i with acute	í
<b>icirc</b>	238	ooee	latin small letter i with circumflex	î
<b>iuml</b>	239	ooef	latin small letter i with diaeresis	ï
<b>eth</b>	240	oof0	latin small letter eth	ð
<b>ntilde</b>	241	oof1	latin small letter n with tilde	ñ
<b>ograve</b>	242	oof2	latin small letter o with grave	ò
<b>oacute</b>	243	oof3	latin small letter o with acute	ó
<b>ocirc</b>	244	oof4	latin small letter o with circumflex	ô
<b>otilde</b>	245	oof5	latin small letter o with tilde	õ
<b>ouml</b>	246	oof6	latin small letter o with diaeresis	ö
<b>divide</b>	247	oof7	division sign	÷
<b>oslash</b>	248	oof8	latin small letter o with stroke = latin small letter o slash	ø
<b>ugrave</b>	249	oof9	latin small letter u with grave	ù
<b>uacute</b>	250	oofa	latin small letter u with acute	ú
<b>ucirc</b>	251	oofb	latin small letter u with circumflex	û
<b>uuml</b>	252	oofc	latin small letter u with diaeresis	ü
<b>yacute</b>	253	oofd	latin small letter y with acute	ý
<b>thorn</b>	254	oofe	latin small letter thorn	þ
<b>yuml</b>	255	ooff	latin small letter y with diaeresis	ÿ

# Reference Guide:- HTML

## Mathematical, Greek and Symbolic Entities

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>f</b> <b>nof</b>	402	0192	latin small f with hook = function = florin	<b>f</b>
<b>Alpha</b>	913	0391	Greek capital letter alpha	<b>Α</b>
<b>Beta</b>	914	0392	Greek capital letter beta	<b>Β</b>
<b>Gamma</b>	915	0393	Greek capital letter gamma	<b>Γ</b>
<b>Delta</b>	916	0394	Greek capital letter delta	<b>Δ</b>
<b>Epsilon</b>	917	0395	Greek capital letter epsilon	<b>Ε</b>
<b>Zeta</b>	918	0396	Greek capital letter zeta	<b>Ζ</b>
<b>Eta</b>	919	0397	Greek capital letter eta	<b>Η</b>
<b>Theta</b>	920	0398	Greek capital letter theta	<b>Θ</b>
<b>Iota</b>	921	0399	Greek capital letter iota	<b>Ι</b>
<b>Kappa</b>	922	039a	Greek capital letter kappa	<b>Κ</b>
<b>Lambda</b>	923	039b	Greek capital letter lamda	<b>Λ</b>
<b>Mu</b>	924	039c	Greek capital letter mu	<b>Μ</b>
<b>Nu</b>	925	039d	Greek capital letter nu	<b>Ν</b>
<b>Xi</b>	926	039e	Greek capital letter xi	<b>Ξ</b>
<b>Omicron</b>	927	039f	Greek capital letter omicron	<b>Ο</b>
<b>Pi</b>	928	03a0	Greek capital letter pi	<b>Π</b>
<b>Rho</b>	929	03a1	Greek capital letter rho	<b>Ρ</b>
	930	03a2		<b>(n/a)</b>
<b>Sigma</b>	931	03a3	Greek capital letter sigma	<b>Σ</b>
<b>Tau</b>	932	03a4	Greek capital letter tau	<b>Τ</b>
<b>Upsilon</b>	933	03a5	Greek capital letter upsilon	<b>Υ</b>
<b>Phi</b>	934	03a6	Greek capital letter phi	<b>Φ</b>
<b>Chi</b>	935	03a7	Greek capital letter chi	<b>Χ</b>
<b>Psi</b>	936	03a8	Greek capital letter psi	<b>Ψ</b>
<b>Omega</b>	937	03a9	Greek capital letter omega	<b>Ω</b>
<b>alpha</b>	945	03b1	Greek small letter alpha	<b>α</b>
<b>beta</b>	946	03b2	Greek small letter beta	<b>β</b>
<b>gamma</b>	947	03b3	Greek small letter gamma	<b>γ</b>
<b>delta</b>	948	03b4	Greek small letter delta	<b>δ</b>
<b>epsilon</b>	949	03b5	Greek small letter epsilon	<b>ε</b>
<b>zeta</b>	950	03b6	Greek small letter zeta	<b>ζ</b>
<b>eta</b>	951	03b7	Greek small letter eta	<b>η</b>
<b>theta</b>	952	03b8	Greek small letter theta	<b>θ</b>
<b>iota</b>	953	03b9	Greek small letter iota	<b>ι</b>
<b>kappa</b>	954	03ba	Greek small letter kappa	<b>κ</b>
<b>lambda</b>	955	03bb	Greek small letter lamda	<b>λ</b>
<b>mu</b>	956	03bc	Greek small letter mu	<b>μ</b>
<b>nu</b>	957	03bd	Greek small letter nu	<b>ν</b>
<b>xi</b>	958	03be	Greek small letter xi	<b>ξ</b>

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>omicron</b>	959	03bf	Greek small letter omicron	ο
<b>pi</b>	960	03c0	Greek small letter pi	π
<b>rho</b>	961	03c1	Greek small letter rho	ρ
<b>sigmaf</b>	962	03c2	Greek small letter final sigma	ς
<b>sigma</b>	963	03c3	Greek small letter sigma	σ
<b>tau</b>	964	03c4	Greek small letter tau	τ
<b>upsilon</b>	965	03c5	Greek small letter upsilon	υ
<b>phi</b>	966	03c6	Greek small letter phi	φ
<b>chi</b>	967	03c7	Greek small letter chi	χ
<b>psi</b>	968	03c8	Greek small letter psi	ψ
<b>omega</b>	969	03c9	Greek small letter omega	ω
<b>thetasym</b>	977	03d1	Greek small letter theta symbol	θ
<b>upsih</b>	978	03d2	Greek upsilon with hook symbol	ϣ
<b>piv</b>	982	03d6	Greek pi symbol	ϖ
<b>bull</b>	8226	2022	bullet = black small circle	•
<b>hellip</b>	8230	2026	horizontal ellipsis = three dot leader	...
<b>prime</b>	8242	2032	prime = minutes = feet	'
<b>Prime</b>	8243	2033	double prime = seconds = inches	"
<b>oline</b>	8254	203e	overline = spacing overscore	¯
<b>frasl</b>	8260	2044	fraction slash	/
<b>image</b>	8465	2111	blackletter capital I = imaginary part	ℐ
<b>weierp</b>	8472	2118	script capital P = power set = Weierstrass p	ℙ
<b>real</b>	8476	211c	blackletter capital R = real part symbol	℔
<b>trade</b>	8482	2122	trade mark sign	™
<b>alefsym</b>	8501	2135	alef symbol = first transfinite cardinal	ℵ
<b>larr</b>	8592	2190	leftwards arrow	←
<b>uarr</b>	8593	2191	upwards arrow	↑
<b>rarr</b>	8594	2192	rightwards arrow	→
<b>darr</b>	8595	2193	downwards arrow	↓
<b>harr</b>	8596	2194	left right arrow	↔
	8597	2195		↕
	8598	2196		↖
	8599	2197		↗
	8600	2198		↘
	8601	2199		↙
	8624	21b0		↰
	8625	21b1		↱
	8626	21b2		↲
	8627	21b3		↳
	8628	21b4		↴
<b>crarr</b>	8629	21b5	downwards arrow with corner leftwards = carriage return	↵
<b>larr</b>	8656	21d0	leftwards double arrow	⇐
<b>uarr</b>	8657	21d1	upwards double arrow	⇑

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>rarr</b>	8658	21d2	rightwards double arrow	⇒
<b>darr</b>	8659	21d3	downwards double arrow	⇓
<b>harr</b>	8650	21d4	left right double arrow	⇔
	8651	21d5		↕
	8652	21d6		↗
	8653	21d7		↘
	8654	21d8		↙
	8655	21d9		↖
<b>forall</b>	8704	2200	for all	∀
	8705	2201		∃
<b>part</b>	8706	2202	partial differential	∂
<b>exist</b>	8707	2203	there exists	∃
	8708	2204		∅
<b>empty</b>	8709	2205	empty set = null set = diameter	∅
	8710	2206		Δ
<b>nabla</b>	8711	2207	nabla = backward difference	∇
<b>isin</b>	8712	2208	element of	∈
<b>notin</b>	8713	2209	not an element of	∉
	8714	220a		∋
<b>ni</b>	8715	220b	contains as member	⊃
	8716	220c		⊄
	8717	220d		⊆
	8718	220e		⊇
<b>prod</b>	8719	220f	n-ary product = product sign	∏
	8720	2210		∑
<b>sum</b>	8721	2211	n-ary sumation	Σ
<b>minus</b>	8722	2212	minus sign	−
	8723	2213		±
	8724	2214		+
	8725	2215		/
	8726	2216		\
<b>lowast</b>	8727	2217	asterisk operator	*
	8728	2218		°
	8729	2219		•
<b>radic</b>	8730	221a	square root = radical sign	√
	8731	221b		∛
	8732	221c		∜
<b>prop</b>	8733	221d	proportional to	∝
<b>infin</b>	8734	221e	infinity	∞
	8735	221f		ℒ
<b>ang</b>	8736	2220	angle	∠
	8737	2221		△
	8738	2222		◁

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
	8739	2223		
	8740	2224		†
	8741	2225		‖
	8742	2226		‡
<b>and</b>	8743	2227	logical and = wedge	∧
<b>or</b>	8744	2228	logical or = vee	∨
<b>cap</b>	8745	2229	intersection = cap	∩
<b>cup</b>	8746	222a	union = cup	∪
<b>int</b>	8747	222b	integral	∫
<b>there4</b>	8756	2234	therefore	∴
	8757	2235		∵
	8759	2237		∷
<b>sim</b>	8764	223c	tilde operator = varies with = similar to	∼
<b>cong</b>	8773	2245	approximately equal to	≈
<b>asymp</b>	8776	2248	almost equal to = asymptotic to	≈
<b>ne</b>	8800	2260	not equal to	≠
<b>equiv</b>	8801	2261	identical to	≡
	8802	2262	not identical to	≢
<b>le</b>	8804	2264	less-than or equal to	≤
<b>ge</b>	8805	2265	greater-than or equal to	≥
<b>sub</b>	8834	2282	subset of	⊂
<b>sup</b>	8835	2283	superset of	⊃
<b>nsup</b>	8836	2284	not a subset of	⊄
	8837	2285	not a superset of	⊈
<b>sube</b>	8838	2286	subset of or equal to	⊆
<b>supe</b>	8839	2287	superset of or equal to	⊇
	8840	2288	not a subset of or equal to	⊈
	8841	2289	not a superset of or equal to	⊉
<b>oplus</b>	8853	2295	circled plus = direct sum	⊕
<b>otimes</b>	8855	2297	circled times = vector product	⊗
<b>perp</b>	8869	22a5	up tack = orthogonal to = perpendicular	⊥
<b>sdot</b>	8901	22c5	dot operator	⋅
<b>lceil</b>	8968	2308	left ceiling = apl upstile	⌈
<b>rceil</b>	8869	2309	right ceiling	⌋
<b>lfloor</b>	8870	230a	left floor = apl downstile	⌊
<b>rfloor</b>	8871	230b	right floor	⌋
<b>lang</b>	9001	2329	left-pointing angle bracket = bra	(n/a)
<b>rang</b>	9002	232a	right-pointing angle bracket = ket	(n/a)
<b>loz</b>	9674	25ca	lozenge	◇
<b>spades</b>	9824	2660	black spade suit	♠
<b>clubs</b>	9827	2663	black club suit = shamrock	♣
<b>hearts</b>	9829	2665	black heart suit = valentine	♥
<b>diams</b>	9830	2666	black diamond suit	♦



# Reference Guide:- HTML

## Special Entities

Entity			Name	Glyph
Alpha	Dec	Hex		
<b>quot</b>	34	0022	quotation mark	"
<b>amp</b>	38	0026	ampersand	&
<b>lt</b>	60	003c	left angle-bracket ('less than' symbol)	<
<b>gt</b>	62	003e	right angle-bracket ('greater than' symbol)	>
<b>OElig</b>	338	0152	latin capital ligature OE	Œ
<b>oelig</b>	339	0153	latin small ligature oe	œ
<b>Scaron</b>	352	0160	latin capital letter S with caron	Š
<b>scaron</b>	353	0161	latin small letter s with caron	š
<b>Yuml</b>	376	0178	latin capital letter Y with diaeresis	ÿ
<b>circ</b>	710	02c6	modifier letter circumflex accent	^
<b>tilde</b>	732	02dc	small tilde	~
<b>ensp</b>	8194	2002	en space	
<b>emsp</b>	8195	2003	em space	
<b>thinsp</b>	8201	2009	thin space	
<b>zwnj</b>	8204	200c	zero width non-joiner	
<b>zwj</b>	8205	200d	zero width joiner	
<b>lrm</b>	8206	200e	left-to-right mark	
<b>rlm</b>	8207	200f	right-to-left mark	
	8236	202c	end directionality override	
	8237	202d	force ltr directionality	
	8238	202e	force rtl directionality	
<b>ndash</b>	8211	2013	en dash	-
<b>mdash</b>	8212	2014	em dash	—
<b>lsquo</b>	8216	2018	left single quotation mark	‘
<b>rsquo</b>	8217	2019	right single quotation mark	’
<b>sbquo</b>	8218	201a	single low-9 quotation mark	‚
<b>ldquo</b>	8220	201c	left double quotation mark	“
<b>rdquo</b>	8221	201d	right double quotation mark	”
<b>bdquo</b>	8222	201e	double low-9 quotation mark	„
<b>dagger</b>	8224	2020	dagger	†
<b>Dagger</b>	8225	2021	double dagger	‡
<b>permil</b>	8240	2030	per mille sign	‰
	8241	2031		‱
<b>lsaquo</b>	8249	2039	single left-pointing angle quotation mark	‹
<b>rsaquo</b>	8250	203a	single right-pointing angle quotation mark	›
<b>euro</b>	8364	20ac	euro sign	€

### a - Anchor

**Syntax:** `<a>...</a>`

**Description:** An anchor is a fundamental part of html documents, as it provides the hypertext links between those documents.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
----------------	------------------------

Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements (not <a href="#">a</a> )
---------------	--

Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements (not <a href="#">a</a> )
--------------	--

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0
-----------	--

**Attributes:**

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
-------	---------------------------------------

i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
-------	---

events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
---------	--

accesskey	accessibility key character
-----------	-----------------------------

charset	char encoding of linked resource ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
---------	--

coords	for use with client-side image maps
--------	-------------------------------------

href	URI for linked resource ( <a href="#">RFC2396</a> ).
------	--

hreflang	<a href="#">2-char language codes</a>
----------	---------------------------------------

name	named link end (see also <code>id</code> within <a href="#">core-attributes</a> ).
------	--

onblur	(script) the element lost the focus
--------	-------------------------------------

onfocus	(script) the element got the focus
---------	------------------------------------

rel	forward link types
-----	--------------------

rev	reverse link types
-----	--------------------

shape	for use with client-side image maps
-------	-------------------------------------

tabindex	position in tabbing order
----------	---------------------------

type	advisory content type ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
------	---

**id:**

**href:**

**name:**

**(within-page links):**

Sometimes you want to be able to link to *sections* of your document, but upon the same page. That is done by using `a` with the `name` attribute, which names a *fragment* of your document. The link to it then employs a URI 'fragment' construct. Here is what naming a fragment of a document can look like (see this [note on namespaces](#) for why both 'id' & 'name' are used):

```
<a id="section-A" name="section-A">Section A</a>
```

The technical name is a [URI 'fragment'](#). An anchor on the same document to that fragment would then look like this:

```
<a href="#section-A">Section A</a>
```

...or from another document:

```
<a href="doc.html#section-A">Section A</a>
```

# abbr - Abbreviation

**Syntax:** `<abbr>...</abbr>`

**Description:** 'abbr' & 'acronym' are easily confused; each is an abbreviation of a longer word, but acronym is used when the short form is a pronounceable word. For each, `title` (see [core-attributes](#)) can be used to allow the long-form to be shown as a 'tooltip' in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# acronym - Acronym

**Syntax:** `<acronym>...</acronym>`

**Description:** 'abbr' & 'acronym' are easily confused; each is an abbreviation of a longer word, but acronym is used when the short form is a pronounceable word. For each, `title` (see [core-attributes](#)) can be used to allow the long-form to be shown as a 'tooltip' in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# address - Address

**Syntax:** `<address>...</address>`

**Description:** `address` is designed to provide contact information for the author of the document.

**See also:** `address`, `blockquote`, `div`, `dl`, `fieldset`, `form`, `hr`, `noscript`, `p`, `table`

### Properties:

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: `applet`, `blockquote`, `body`, `button`, `center`, `dd`, `del`, `div`, `fieldset`, `form`, `iframe`, `ins`, `li`, `map`, `noframes`, `noscript`, `object`, `td`, `th`

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

### Attributes:

---

`core:` - see `core-attributes`

---

`i18n:` - see `language-attributes`

---

`events:` - see `event attributes`

---

# applet - Java applet

**Syntax:** `<applet width="100" height="100">...</applet>`

**Description:** applet is used to embed Java applets. It is deprecated in HTML4 in favour of [object](#)

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> except <a href="#">pre</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">param</a> elements followed by <a href="#">block-level</a> elements and/or <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
il8n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
align	vertical or horizontal alignment
alt	short description
archive	comma-separated archive list
code	applet class file
codebase	optional base URI for applet
height	initial height <span>Required</span>
hspace	horizontal gutter
name	allows applets to find each other
object	serialized applet file
vspace	vertical gutter
width	initial width <span>Required</span>

**See also:** [param](#)

## area - Image map region

**Syntax:** `<area alt="functional description">`

**Description:** `area` defines a client-side image map. HTML4 has extended the `map` element so that it can contain one or more **block-level** elements—such as `object`—in addition to the `area` element.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Other</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">map</a>
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>accesskey</code>	accessibility key character
<code>alt</code>	short description <span>Required</span>
<code>coords</code>	comma-separated list of lengths
<code>href</code>	URI for linked resource
<code>nohref</code>	inactive region
<code>onblur</code>	(script) the element lost the focus
<code>onfocus</code>	(script) the element got the focus
<code>shape</code>	(rect   circle   poly   default) (default rect) controls interpretation of coords
<code>tabindex</code>	position in tabbing order

Here is a typical pre- HTML4 usage:

```
<map name="mymap">
<area href="/reference/" alt="html and css reference" coords="5,5,95,195">
<area href="/design/" alt="design guide" coords="105,5,195,195">
<area href="/tools/" alt="tools" coords="205,5,295,195">
</map>

```



### **b - Bold text**

**Syntax:** `<b>...</b>`

**Description:** `bold` and `strong` text by default are normally **rendered the same** in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: [Inline](#)

---

Contained in: [Block-level](#) + [Inline](#) elements

---

Can contain: [Inline](#) elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

---

## base - Document base url

**Syntax:** <base>

**Description:** `base` (one only) defines the *absolute URL* used to resolve document *relative* urls. It can be especially useful for docs sent in an email, etc.

**See also:** `base`, `isindex`, `head`, `link`, `meta`, `object`, `script`, `style`, `title`

**Properties:**

Content model: **Other**

Contained in: `head`

Can contain: (empty)

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

`lang`: - see [language-attributes](#)

`href` URI that acts as base URI

**Required**

`target` **(4.01 Frameset)** render links in that frame by default

### href:

**(Required)** in HTML4 Strict but **optional in Loose** `href` specifies an absolute URI that acts as the base URI for resolving relative URIs. Most of the time this element should not be needed, as the browser will be able to accurately determine what the base url is, or perhaps all `href` attributes throughout the document are already *absolute* URLs.

### absolute v's relative URI:

A URI can consist of many parts. The *relative* URI *starts* at the part following the last slash (‘/’) in the *path*:

URI: `scheme://user:pass@host:port/path?query#fragment`

eg: <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/links.html#h-12.4.1>

- `scheme`: “http”
- `user`: (optional) username
- `pass`: (optional) password
- `host`: “www.w3.org”
- `port`: (optional) port number (eg 80 for most web documents)
- `path`: (can be empty) “TR/REC-html40/struct/links.html”
- `query`: (optional) (not used here)
- `fragment`: (optional) “h-12.4.1”

## Reference Guide:- HTML

Using the previous example, that document could have the following (note that a *fragment* would NOT appear within a `base.href`, and that a “..” says “start at the next higher directory”, which here is “REC-html40”):

*base.href:*

`http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/links.html`

*start dir for relative links:*

`http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/`

*example relative link:*

`<a href="../../index/list.html">Index</a>`

*...which latter would resolve to the URI:*

<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/index/list.html>

### **applet & object:**

The `object` and `applet` elements define attributes that take precedence over the value set by the `BASE` element.

# basefont - Base font change

**Syntax:** `<basefont>...</basefont>`

**Description:** `basefont` is used to change the base font of all content that follows the instruction. It is deprecated in HTML4 in favour of `style-sheets` (and, just like `font`, also considered completely naff).

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> except <a href="#">pre</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>size</code>	[+ -]nn e.g. <code>size="+1"</code> , <code>size="4"</code>
<code>color</code>	(sRGB colours) text colour
<code>face</code>	comma-separated list of font names

# bdo - BiDi override

**Syntax:** `<bdo dir="ltr">...</bdo>`

**Description:** `bdo` takes a little bit of explanation (below):

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

Unicode and/or UTF8 chars have an inherent property of *directionality*: essentially, alphabets from languages to the *east* (and inclusive) of Israel are written right-to-left, whilst those *west* of Israel are written left-to-right. `bdo`, together with the `dir` attribute (see [language-attributes](#)), is used to signal a change to the default direction of those characters (typically when a word from a language with one [dir](#) is included within (say) a quotation with a different [dir](#) value).

**Note:** Unicode contains identical signals within the charset:

- `&#x202D;` - force ltr directionality
- `&#x202E;` - force rtl directionality
- `&#x202C;` - end the override

# big - Large text

**Syntax:** `<big>...</big>`

**Description:** `big` is normally rendered in a visual browser in a larger font size. It is also possible to nest this element, which can lead to unpredictable results, as you cannot be certain of the reader's starting font size.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> except <a href="#">pre</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# blockquote - Block quotation

**Syntax:** <blockquote>...</blockquote>

**Description:** `blockquote` is normally compared to `q` (short quotation):

`q` is inline & can contain only **inline** elements

`blockquote` can contain **block-level** elements

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: **4.01 Strict:** One or more **block-level** elements, or [script](#).  
**4.01 Loose:** **inline** elements or **block-level** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

---

Paradoxically, whilst `blockquote` can *contain* `p` elements it can NOT itself be contained within a paragraph element under 4.01 Strict (to do so would cause the render mode to switch to “Quirks mode”).

# body - Document body

**Syntax:** `<body>...</body>`

**Description:** `body` contains the document *body*. Curiously, it is **Required** within the html container object-model, yet it's start & end tags are *optional* (making it then a kind of *ghost* in the machine).

**See also:** `body`, `del`, `frameset`, `ins`, `html`, `noframes`, `script`

**Properties:**

Content model: **Other**

Contained in: 4.01 Strict: `html`  
4.01 Loose: `html`  
4.01 Frameset: `noframes`

Can contain: 4.01 Strict: one or more **block-level** elements or `del`, `ins`, `script`  
4.01 Loose: **inline** elements, **block-level** elements, `del`, `ins`  
4.01 Frameset: (same as **Loose**)

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

`core`: - see **core-attributes**  
`il8n`: - see **language-attributes**  
`events`: - see **event attributes**

<code>alink</code>	(COLOR) colour of selected links (deprecated)
<code>background</code>	(URI) texture tile for document background (deprecated)
<code>bgcolor</code>	(COLOR) document background colour (deprecated)
<code>link</code>	(COLOR) colour of links (deprecated)
<code>onload</code>	(script) the document has been loaded
<code>onunload</code>	(script) the document has been removed
<code>text</code>	(COLOR) document text colour (deprecated)
<code>vlink</code>	(COLOR) colour of visited links (deprecated)

**frameset:**

**HTML4 Frameset** documents do not use `body` at all, but rather use `frameset` as their equivalent element. The one exception to this rule is `noframes`, which has `body` as it's first element (implicitly or explicitly) within the content.



### br - Line break

**Syntax:** `<br>`

**Description:** `br` forces a break within the flow of text.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>clear</code>	<a href="#">(left all right none)</a> control of text flow (deprecated)

#### **clear=(left|all|right|none):**

The [\(deprecated\)](#) `clear` attribute is used to decide whether the flow of content continues below adjacent, floating blocks (normally images or tables).

eg

`<br clear="left">`: move next content flow below any content at left  
(but together with content at right)

# button - Button

**Syntax:** `<button type="submit" name="something">...</button>`

**Description:** `button` is new in HTML4, and defines a *submit* (the default), *reset* or (push) button. Pre-HTML4 browsers used the `input` control; `button` is designed to allow a greater range of internal labels, including images & emphasis.

**See also:** `button`, `fieldset`, `form`, `input`, `label`, `legend`, `optgroup`, `option`, `select`, `textarea`

### Properties:

Content model:	Inline
Contained in:	Block-level elements, inline elements except <code>button</code>
Can contain:	Inline elements except <code>a</code> , <code>button</code> , <code>input</code> , <code>iframe</code> , <code>label</code> , <code>select</code> or <code>textarea</code> Block-level elements except <code>fieldset</code> , <code>form</code> or <code>isindex</code>
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
l18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
accesskey	accessibility key character
disabled	
name	submit as part of form <span>Required</span>
onblur	(script) the element lost the focus
onfocus	(script) the element got the focus
tabindex	position in tabbing order
type	(button reset submit) (default: submit) for use as form button <span>Required</span>
value	sent to server when submitted

## Reference Guide:- HTML

**type="...":**

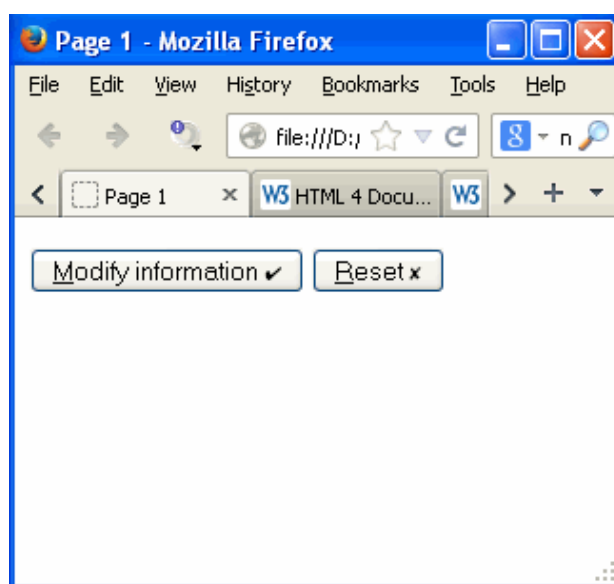
**name:**

**value:**

`name` and `value` attributes act in the same way as other controls: their value pairs are sent to server when a *submit* button is pushed (if no `type` attribute is specified then the button is a *submit* button; good programming practice dictates that you *always* specify name & value attributes for submit & push buttons, even if they are the same as the default values).

Below is a typical usage defining 2 buttons, with the results below. Note that neither image file is available, so the browser shows the *alt* values. Note also that that is a *\*very\** poor example for me to set (!), as the web-server error logs would fill up with 404 notices for the missing files:

```
<p>
<button name="submit" value="modify" accesskey="M">
  <span style="text-decoration:underline;">M</span>odify information
  
</button>
<button name="reset" accesskey="R">
  <span style="text-decoration:underline;">R</span>eset
  
</button>
</p>
```



**accesskey:**

The examples above use 'M' & 'R' as the access-keys, with the point here that each are Capital letters. Any single Unicode/UTF8 letter, or *entity*, can be used, and this flexibility can easily lead into usability issues. How are your users, as one example, going to manage if you specify "&AElig;" as the access-character (the *entity* for "Æ"), let alone Unicode/UTF8, where it is perfectly possible to specify a character from the [Greek](#), [Cyrillic](#), [Israeli](#), [Arabic](#), [Chinese](#), [Japanese](#) or many other alphabets?

Even the examples above have a usability issue... The classic way to access a control (I was using winXP) is to use the 'Alt' key + the letter (both keys at the same time). So, whilst testing the buttons above I did "Alt+m" & "Alt+r", but neither worked! That was because it needed to be "Alt+M" or "Alt+R" (3 keys at the same time, and not 2). On such small issues will your users curse you, or thank you.

### caption - Table caption

**Syntax:** `<caption>...</caption>`

**Description:** `caption` optionally defines a caption for the table, and is a useful useability feature for users of all types of browser. `caption` allows a block of (inline) text, whilst the `summary` attribute of `table` allows a mid-length line of text (but mostly for users using browser text-readers) and the `title` attribute of `table` allows a brief tooltip-type text.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	<b>Block</b>
Contained in:	<code>table</code>
Can contain:	<b>Inline</b> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <b>core-attributes</b>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <b>language-attributes</b>
<code>events:</code>	- see <b>event attributes</b>

<code>align</code>	(top bottom left right) caption position relative to table (deprecated)
--------------------	--

If used, `caption` must be the first element in the table. See **table: the whole thing** for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

# center - Centred block

**Syntax:**      <center>...</center>

**Description:** The W3C describes `center` as “shorthand for `DIV align=center`” (that attribute is also **deprecated** throughout HTML4 Strict).

*A note for UK children:* we Brits make a point, most generously, of *never*, ever pointing out to the Yanks that they cannot spell “*centre*” correctly.

### Properties:

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: `applet`, `blockquote`, `body`, `button`, `center`, `dd`, `del`, `div`, `fieldset`, `form`, `iframe`, `ins`, `li`, `map`, `noframes`, `noscript`, `object`, `td`, `th`

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements, **block-level** elements

---

Standard: **HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final**

---

### Attributes:

---

`core:`            - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:`            - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:`          - see [event attributes](#)

---

`center` has retained a strong connection with `table` due to poor support from HTML4 & earlier browsers for the `align` attribute + early lack of support for the CSS method of centring tables (setting horizontal margins to ‘auto’).

# **cite - Citation**

**Syntax:** `<cite>...</cite>`

**Description:** `cite` is normally rendered in a visual browser in *italics*.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

---

Content model: [Inline](#)

---

Contained in: [Block-level](#) + [Inline](#) elements

---

Can contain: [Inline](#) elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

### Attributes:

---

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

---

# code - Computer code

**Syntax:** `<code>...</code>`

**Description:** `code` is normally rendered in a visual browser in monospaced text.

**Note:** `code` contained within any container other than `pre` will have any multiple contiguous spaces collapsed to a single space; that is probably not what you want.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), `code`, [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

### col - Table column

**Syntax:** `<col>`

**Description:** `col` optionally defines common attributes within a column of `table` data-cells (`td` or `th`). `colgroup` is used to group columns structurally, whilst `col` saves typing out the identical attributes for each of the data-cells.

**Note:** support is poor for `col` in early HTML4 browsers.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
Contained in:	<code>colgroup</code> , <code>table</code>
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
<code>char</code>	(default: '.') char value if <code>align=char</code>
<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
<code>span</code>	(default: 1) COL attributes affect N columns
<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells
<code>width</code>	(pixels or % or relative) column width

If used, `col` must be *after* the optional `caption` and *before* the optional `thead`. See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.



## colgroup - Table column group

**Syntax:** `<colgroup>...<colgroup>`

**Description:** The optional `colgroup` is intended to “create structural divisions within a table”.by grouping columns of `table` data-cells (`td` or `th`) together. Fine intentions then subverted by the HTML designers providing the `col` element, which (seems to have) the identical attributes & action of the `colgroup` element (*doh!*). Early browser designers for HTML4 ignored *both* elements.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
Contained in:	<code>table</code>
Can contain:	Zero or more <code>col</code> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>l18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
<code>char</code>	(default: ‘.’) char value if <code>align=char</code>
<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
<code>span</code>	(default: 1) (ignored if <code>colgroup</code> contains <code>col</code> elements) default number of columns in group
<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells
<code>width</code>	(pixels or % or relative) column width

`colgroup` is *very* useful when a `table` contains a very large number of columns with identical layout. `col` elements can then be used if one or two columns differ from the rest ( `col` attributes will override `colgroup` attributes, and any `span` on `colgroup` will be ignored).

If used, `colgroup` must be *after* the optional `caption` and *before* the optional `thead`. See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

# dd - Definition description

**Syntax:** `<dd>...</dd>`

**Description:** dd is part of a useful list structure.

**See also:** dd, [dl](#), [dt](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">dl</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements, <a href="#">block-level</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

See [the whole thing](#) for an example of all *definition* elements put together.

## del - Deleted text

**Syntax:** `<del>...</del>`

**Description:** `del` is normally rendered in a visual browser in ~~strikethrough text~~, and is intended to indicate text *deleted from this version of the document*. It is unusual in being capable of being either a **block-level** or an **inline** element. If used in an inline context—for example, within a **paragraph**—it cannot then contain any **block-level** elements.

**See also:** [ins](#), [del](#), [strike](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a> or <a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements, <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements, <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>l18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

<code>cite</code>	(URI) info on reason for change
<code>datetime</code>	date and time of change (ISO format: “YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ssTZD”)

**`cite:`**

**`datetime:`**

**`title:`**

`cite` + `datetime` are optionally available to give a url for readers to obtain further information on the reason for the change (`cite`) and the time & date of that change (`datetime`). [W3C states](#) that “*they are primarily intended for private use (e.g. by server-side scripts collecting statistics about a site's edits), not for readers*”. A simpler method to give succinct info is via the `title` attribute (see [core-attributes](#)).

# dfn - Defined term

**Syntax:** `<dfn>...</dfn>`

**Description:** `dfn` is normally rendered in a visual browser in *italic text*.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# dir - Directory list

**Syntax:** `<dir>...</dir>`

**Description:** `dir` is a list of items for a directory list (**deprecated** in HTML 4 Strict in favour of `ol` or `ul`). Note that the contained `li` elements are NOT allowed to contain **block-level** elements, which prevents a nested listing of (for example) sub-directories.

**See also:** `dir`, `li`, `menu`, `ol`, `ul`

### Properties:

Content model:	Block
----------------	-------

Contained in:	<code>applet</code> , <code>blockquote</code> , <code>body</code> , <code>button</code> , <code>center</code> , <code>dd</code> , <code>del</code> , <code>div</code> , <code>fieldset</code> , <code>form</code> , <code>iframe</code> , <code>ins</code> , <code>li</code> , <code>map</code> , <code>noframes</code> , <code>noscript</code> , <code>object</code> , <code>td</code> , <code>th</code>
---------------	---

Can contain:	One or more <code>li</code> elements (which cannot contain <b>block-level</b> elements)
--------------	---

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0
-----------	---

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <b>core-attributes</b>
--------------------	------------------------------

<code>i18n:</code>	- see <b>language-attributes</b>
--------------------	----------------------------------

<code>events:</code>	- see <b>event attributes</b>
----------------------	-------------------------------

<code>compact</code>	display in a compact style ( <b>deprecated</b> )
----------------------	--

### compact:

`compact` is poorly supported by browsers.

# div - Generic block-level container

**Syntax:** `<div>...</div>`

**Description:** `div` is normally compared to `span` (inline container):  
The intention of both containers is essentially to allow style to be applied to a set of **block-level** (`div`) or **inline** (`span`) elements.

**See also:** `address`, `blockquote`, `div`, `dl`, `fieldset`, `form`, `hr`, `noscript`, `p`, `table`

### Properties:

Content model:	<b>Block</b>
----------------	--------------

Contained in:	<code>applet</code> , <code>blockquote</code> , <code>body</code> , <code>button</code> , <code>center</code> , <code>dd</code> , <code>del</code> , <code>div</code> , <code>fieldset</code> , <code>form</code> , <code>iframe</code> , <code>ins</code> , <code>li</code> , <code>map</code> , <code>noframes</code> , <code>noscript</code> , <code>object</code> , <code>td</code> , <code>th</code>
---------------	---

Can contain:	<b>Inline</b> elements, <b>block-level</b> elements
--------------	---

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	----------------------------------

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <b>core-attributes</b>
--------------------	------------------------------

<code>i18n:</code>	- see <b>language-attributes</b>
--------------------	----------------------------------

<code>events:</code>	- see <b>event attributes</b>
----------------------	-------------------------------

<code>align</code>	(left   center   right   justify) horizontal alignment (deprecated)
--------------------	---

### dl - Definition list

**Syntax:** `<dl>...</dl>`

**Description:** dl is the container for a useful list structure.

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: One or more [dt](#) or [dd](#) elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

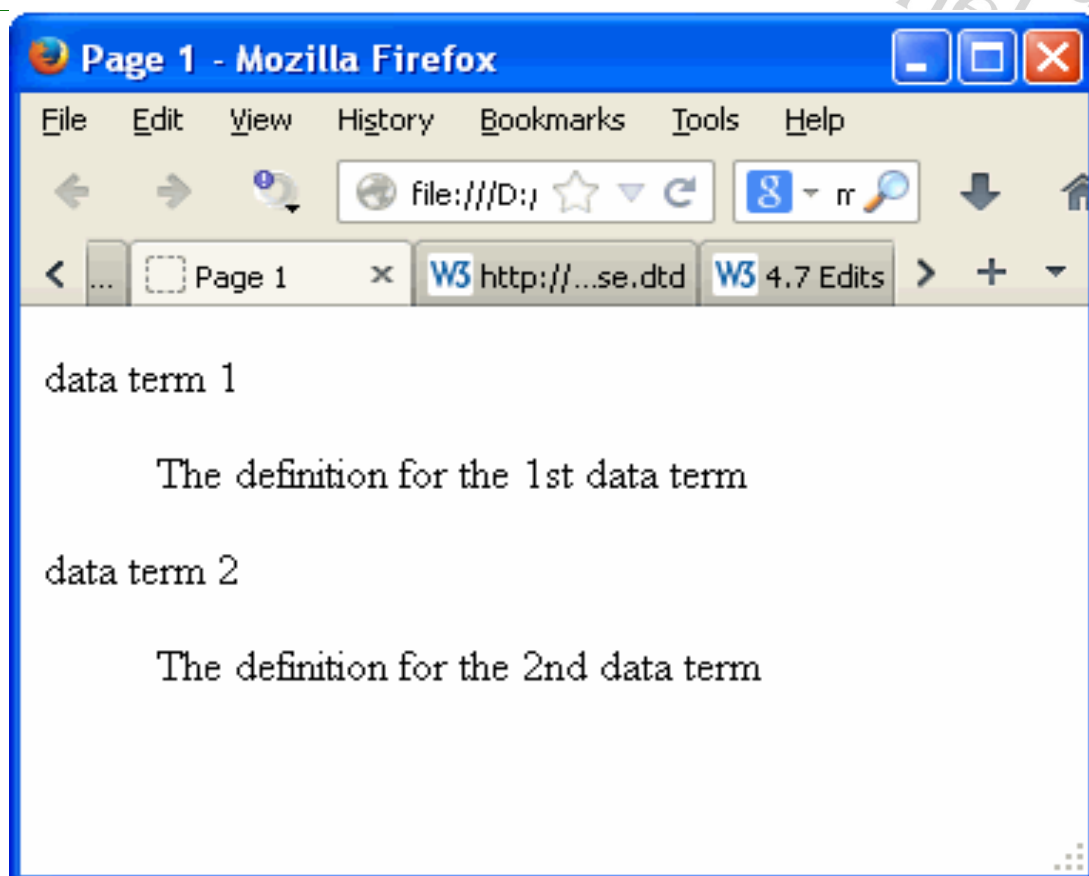
**See also:** [dd](#), [dl](#), [dt](#)

#### the whole thing:

This is what the whole set can look like:

```
<dl>
  <dt>data term 1</dt>
  <dd>
    <p>
      The definition for the 1st data term
    </p>
  </dd>
  <dt>data term 2</dt>
  <dd>
    <p>
      The definition for the 2nd data term
    </p>
  </dd>
</dl>
```

...and, on the next page, what it looks like in Firefox23 with the default stylesheet:





## doctype - Document Preamble

**Syntax:** `<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd">`

**Description:** doctype is a “required preamble” and is “required for legacy reasons” ([HTML5 Draft](#), Sep 2013) (HTML5 itself does NOT require either *Public* nor *System* identifiers). Before HTML5 it never appears within the syntax, and is mentioned only in passing or within the Document Type Declaration (DTD) but, make no mistake, with HTML4 & later the browser will make sure that you pay for it if you miss it from the document.

### Properties:

Content model:	Other
Contained in:	(n/a)
Can contain:	(n/a)
Standard:	HTML5 Draft, HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

Public identifier:	<p>This is ‘ PUBLIC ’ followed by a FPI for the html version in use. In HTML5, the ‘Public identifier + System Identifier’ together are called an “<i>obsolete permitted DOCTYPE string</i>”, and only the four FPI’s + DTDs below are allowed, to help authors transition from HTML4 and XHTML1.</p> <p><b>FPIs:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.0//EN</code></li> <li>• <code>-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01//EN</code></li> <li>• <code>-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN</code></li> <li>• <code>-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.1//EN</code></li> </ul>
System identifier:	<p>This is the URL for the DTD that refers to the html version in use. As a URL it is case-sensitive, whereas all else is case-insensitive.</p> <p><b>DTDs:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/strict.dtd</code></li> <li>• <code>http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/strict.dtd</code></li> <li>• <code>http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd</code></li> <li>• <code>http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml11/DTD/xhtml11.dtd</code></li> </ul>
Legacy Doctypes:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Frameset//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/frameset.dtd"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML Basic 1.1//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1-basic/xhtml1-basic11.dtd"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Frameset//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-frameset.dtd"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 3.2 Final//EN"&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//IETF//DTD HTML 2.0//EN"&gt;</code></li> </ul>

### Strict vs Transitional

HTML4 represented a *big* change in working practices compared to earlier versions, and that was a challenge for developers used to working with html3, etc.. *'Transitional'* was therefore intended as a sort of halfway-house for those that found it difficult to completely change overnight, whilst *'Strict'* is how the language was intended to be.

What was the big change? Of the many changes, one of the biggest was support for *Style Sheets (CSS)*; this meant moving all presentational aspects from markup to CSS. Ultimately, this makes all websites (but especially very large ones) *very* much easier to maintain. It is, however, a completely different way to work compared to html3 & earlier markup.

*PS*

*Script & Style* both existed in HTML3.2 Final but only as *placeholders*, ready for the next version.

# dt - Definition term

**Syntax:** `<dt>...</dt>`

**Description:** `dt` is part of a useful list structure.

**See also:** [dd](#), [dl](#), [dt](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">dl</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

See [the whole thing](#) for an example of all elements put together.

# em - Emphasis

**Syntax:** `<em>...</em>`

**Description:** `em` and `i` text are normally rendered the *same as each other* in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# fieldset - Form control group

**Syntax:** `<fieldset>...</fieldset>`

**Description:** `fieldset` is designed to group together related controls within a form; it *\*must\** be followed by `legend`.

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

### Properties:

Content model: **Block**

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

Can contain: A [legend](#) element, followed by zero or more **block-level** elements and **inline** elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

This is what the whole set can look like:

```
<form method="post" action="/cgi-bin/order.cgi">
  <fieldset>
    <legend accesskey="i">contact information</legend>
    <table>
      ...
    </table>
  </fieldset>
</form>
```

# font - Font change

**Syntax:** `<font>...</font>`

**Description:** `font` is used to cause a local change to font. It is deprecated in HTML4 in favour of `style-sheets` (and, anyway, also considered completely naff).

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> except <a href="#">pre</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>size</code>	[+ -]nn e.g. <code>size="+1"</code> , <code>size="4"</code>
<code>color</code>	(sRGB colours) text colour
<code>face</code>	comma-separated list of font names

## form - Interactive form

**Syntax:** `<form action="(URI)">...</form>`

**Description:** `form` defines an *interactive* form. The `form` element can contain form controls (`button`, `input`, `option`, `select`, `textarea`) which allow user interaction. The user submits the form data via an `input` or a `button` element with `"type="submit"`.

**See also:** `address`, `blockquote`, `div`, `dl`, `fieldset`, `form`, `hr`, `noscript`, `p`, `table`

**Properties:**

Content model: **Block**

Contained in: `applet`, `blockquote`, `body`, `center`, `dd`, `del`, `div`, `fieldset`, `iframe`, `ins`, `li`, `map`, `noframes`, `noscript`, `object`, `td`, `th`

Can contain: 4.01 Strict: one or more `script` or **block-level** elements except `form`  
4.01 Loose: **inline** elements or **block-level** elements except `form`

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see **core-attributes**

`i18n:` - see **language-attributes**

`events:` - see **event attributes**

`accept` list of MIME types for file upload (**RFC2045**)

`accept-charset` list of supported charsets (**RFC2045**)

`action` (URI) server-side form handler **Required**

`enctype` default: `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` (**RFC2045**)

`method` (`get|post`) (default: `get`)  
HTTP method used to submit the form

`name` name of form for scripting

`onreset` (script) the form was reset

`onsubmit` (script) the form was submitted

`target` **render in this frame (deprecated)**

**See also:** `button`, `fieldset`, `form`, `input`, `label`, `legend`, `optgroup`, `option`, `select`, `textarea`

### **method:**

(default: “get”) In almost every circumstance this will need to be “post”. If not, the form contents are placed in the URL, and that puts severe limits on the amount of info that can be sent.

### **enctype:**

(default: “application/x-www-form-urlencoded”) This aspect used to be a black art; these days, scripting languages such as PHP make it most simple to handle the forms server-side. This attribute is likely to be changed only if the form receives file uploads.

This is what the whole set can look like:

```
<form method="post" action="/cgi-bin/order.cgi">
  <fieldset>
    <legend accesskey="i">contact information</legend>
    <table>
      ...
    </table>
  </fieldset>
  <p>
    <input type=submit value="submit order">
    <input type=reset value="clear order form">
  </p>
</form>
```



# frame - Frame

**Syntax:** <frame>

**Description:** frame is a rectangular region of the display, which itself is defined by frameset, and within which the frame *must* be contained. The content of the frame comes from the attribute src. Note that *none* of the frame attributes are *required*, though many have default values.

**See also:** [body](#), [frame](#), [frameset](#), [head](#), [iframe](#), [noframes](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Other</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">frameset</a>
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Frameset

**Attributes:**

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
longdesc	link to long description (intended to complement <a href="#">title</a> )
name	name of frame for targetting
src	(URI) source of frame content
frameborder	(default: 1 (yes)) request frame borders?
marginwidth	margin widths in pixels
marginheight	margin height in pixels
noresize	(default: noresize) allow users to resize frames?
scrolling	(yes no auto) (default: auto) scrollbar or none

**name:**

name must begin with a letter (followed by a mixture of letters and/or digits).

See [how the W3C frames it](#) for the full picture.

# frameset - Frameset

**Syntax:** `<frameset>...</frameset>`

**Description:** `frameset` replaces the `body` element; with this sole exception, the **HTML4 Frameset DTD** is identical to the **HTML4 Transitional DTD** (do notice the hint that the W3C does not want you to use Frames). Elements normally placed within a `body` element, if *preceding* the `frameset` element, will invalidate the `frameset`.

**See also:** `body`, `frame`, `frameset`, `head`, `iframe`, `noframes`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	html
Can contain:	One or more <code>frameset</code> & <code>frame</code> elements, as well as an optional <code>noframes</code>
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Frameset

**Attributes:**

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
rows	(1 or more, comma separated: pixels or % or relative) (default: 100% (1 row)) list of lengths
cols	(1 or more, comma separated: pixels or % or relative) (default: 100% (1 row)) list of lengths
onload	(script) all the frames have been loaded
onunload	(script) all the frames have been removed

Frames are rectangular regions of the display. `frameset` specifies the set of frames that will constitute a full document display.

One of the problematic features of `frameset` & `frames` is that it allows the URI of each frame to be from different domains. This means, for example, that *your* carefully crafted pages may be shown within a screen with someone else's url in the address bar. Many people call this "theft".

`frameset` exists for a technical as well as a practical reason; at HTML4 introduction, so many html documents were missing a `body` tag that they needed to specify a named-element to differentiate **4.0 Frameset** docs from **4.0 Loose** docs. For the same reason, `frameset` (but not `body`) tags are **Required** within a HTML4 *frameset* document.

# Reference Guide:- HTML

## how the W3C frames it:

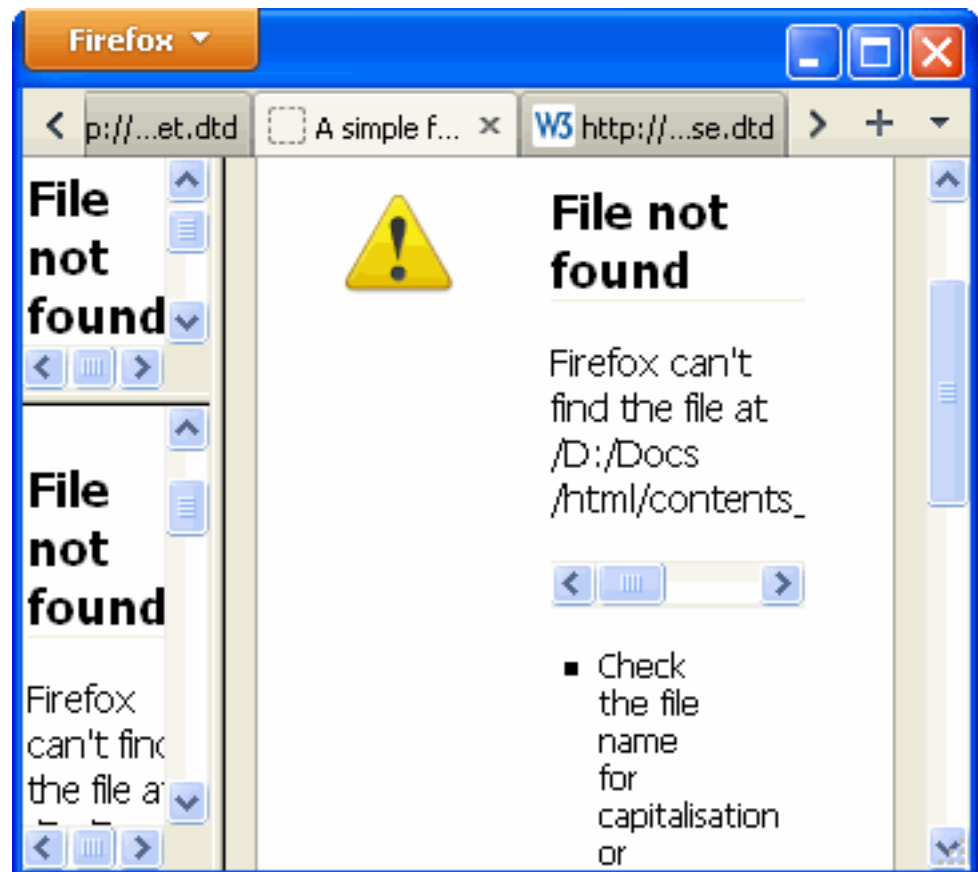
Here is html [from the W3C](#):

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Frameset//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/frameset.dtd">
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>A simple frameset document</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<FRAMESET cols="20%, 80%">
  <FRAMESET rows="100, 200">
    <FRAME src="contents_of_frame1.html">
    <FRAME src="contents_of_frame2.gif">
  </FRAMESET>
  <FRAME src="contents_of_frame3.html">
</NOFRAMES>
  <P>This frameset document contains:
  <UL>
    <LI><A href="contents_of_frame1.html">Some neat contents</A>
    <LI><IMG src="contents_of_frame2.gif" alt="A neat image">
    <LI><A href="contents_of_frame3.html">Some other neat
contents</A>
  </UL>
</NOFRAMES>
</FRAMESET>
</HTML>
```

...and how it looks in Firefox23 with default style:

*Note 1:* the 3 pieces of content do not exist, but you can see the separators between each `frame`.

*Note 2:* although it is not visible in the picture, the separators can be moved via the mouse (see `frame.noresize`) (no support).



## h1 - Level-one heading

**Syntax:** `<h1>...</h1>`

**Description:** h1 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

**Properties:**

Content model: **Block**

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

Can contain: **Inline** elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

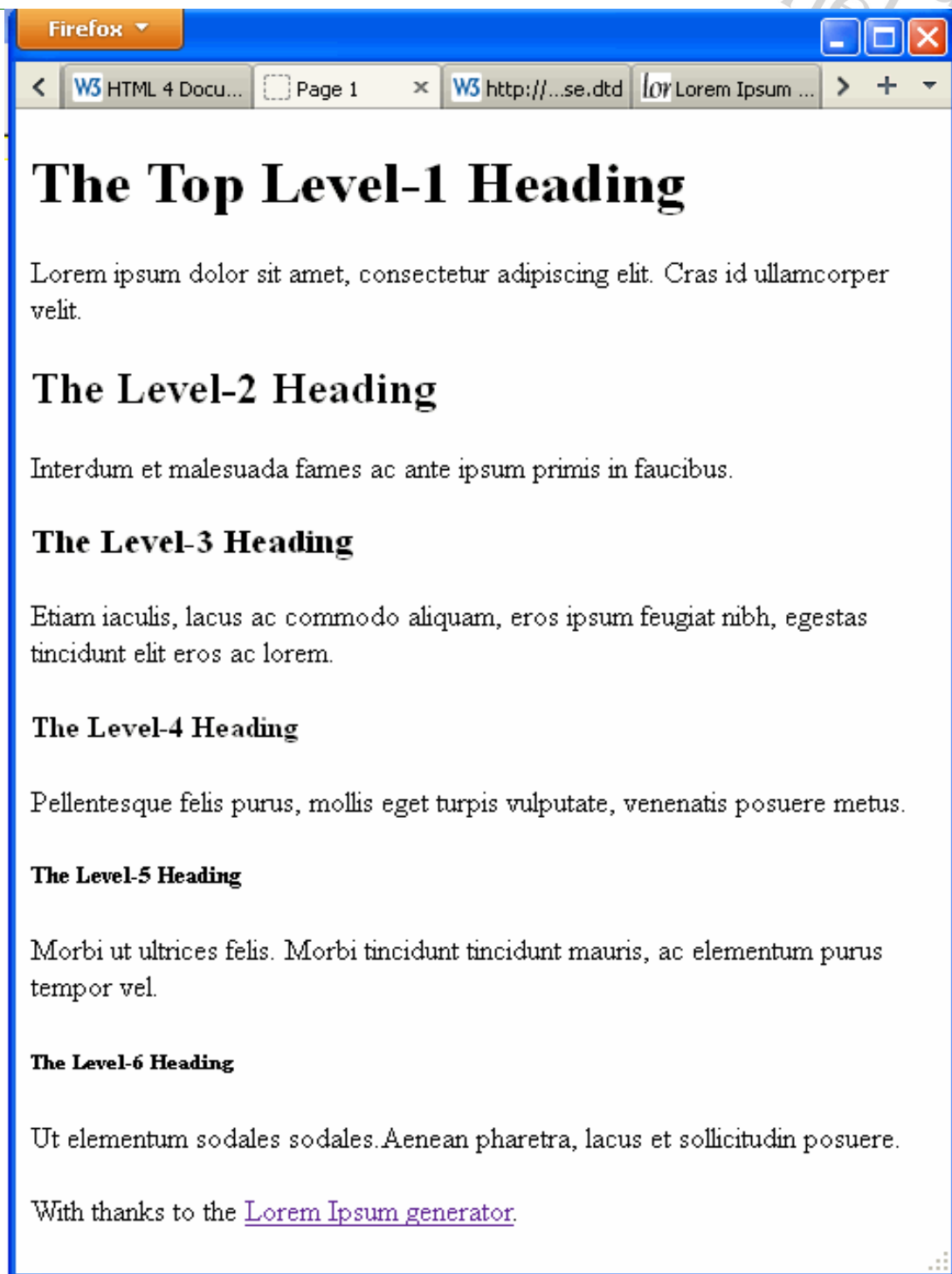
events: - see [event attributes](#)

align [\(left|center|right|justify\)](#) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

**style:**

Visual browsers use a *very* simple algorithm in how they display headings; you will almost certainly want to change it. Below is some simple html + then how it looks (default, no added style) in FireFox23.0.1:

```
<h1>The Top Level-1 Heading</h1>
<p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Cras id
ullamcorper velit.</p>
<h2>The Level-2 Heading</h2>
<p>Interdum et malesuada fames ac ante ipsum primis in faucibus.</p>
<h3>The Level-3 Heading</h3>
<p>Etiam iaculis, lacus ac commodo aliquam, eros ipsum feugiat nibh,
egestas tincidunt elit eros ac lorem.</p>
<h4>The Level-4 Heading</h4>
<p>Pellentesque felis purus, mollis eget turpis vulputate, venenatis
posuere metus.</p>
<h5>The Level-5 Heading</h5>
<p>Morbi ut ultrices felis. Morbi tincidunt tincidunt mauris, ac
elementum purus tempor vel.</p>
<h6>The Level-6 Heading</h6>
<p>Ut elementum sodales sodales. Aenean pharetra, lacus et sollicitudin
posuere.<br><br>
  With thanks to the <a href="http://www.lipsum.com/">Lorem Ipsum
generator</a>.</p>
```



You may also be interested to know that Google (and other SEs) use their investigation of a document's *headings* as part of their decision on the Page-Rank of that document.

# h2 - Level-two heading

**Syntax:** `<h2>...</h2>`

**Description:** h2 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

---

align [\(left|center|right|justify\)](#) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

---

**style:**

Look at the bottom of [h1](#) to see how the 6 headers look in a browser *without* any added style.

# h3 - Level-three heading

**Syntax:** `<h3>...</h3>`

**Description:** h3 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

---

align [\(left|center|right|justify\)](#) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

---

**style:**

Look at the bottom of [h1](#) to see how the 6 headers look in a browser *without* any added style.

# h4 - Level-four heading

**Syntax:** `<h4>...</h4>`

**Description:** h4 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

---

align [\(left|center|right|justify\)](#) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

---

**style:**

Look at the bottom of [h1](#) to see how the 6 headers look in a browser *without* any added style.



# h5 - Level-five heading

**Syntax:** `<h5>...</h5>`

**Description:** h5 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: **Inline** elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

---

align [\(left|center|right|justify\)](#) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

---

**style:**

Look at the bottom of [h1](#) to see how the 6 headers look in a browser *without* any added style.

# h6 - Level-six heading

**Syntax:** `<h6>...</h6>`

**Description:** h6 (etc.) are *headings* for a document, where 'h1' is the most-important heading, and 'h6' is the least-important. As part of learning to create readable documents, you should ensure that each html doc that you write has one (and only one) h1 heading. Other headings are then optional, but can also help make what you write more readable if carefully chosen.

**See also:** [h1](#), [h2](#), [h3](#), [h4](#), [h5](#), [h6](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<a href="#">applet</a> , <a href="#">blockquote</a> , <a href="#">body</a> , <a href="#">button</a> , <a href="#">center</a> , <a href="#">dd</a> , <a href="#">del</a> , <a href="#">div</a> , <a href="#">fieldset</a> , <a href="#">form</a> , <a href="#">iframe</a> , <a href="#">ins</a> , <a href="#">li</a> , <a href="#">map</a> , <a href="#">noframes</a> , <a href="#">noscript</a> , <a href="#">object</a> , <a href="#">td</a> , <a href="#">th</a>
Can contain:	Inline elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
align	(left center right justify) horizontal alignment (deprecated)

### style:

Look at the bottom of [h1](#) to see how the 6 headers look in a browser *without* any added style.

# head - Document head

**Syntax:** `<head>...</head>`

**Description:** head is designed to provide *header information* for the HTML document. In general, the `title` (**required**) is the only element that is seen. Curiously, and exactly like `html` and `body`, head is **Required** within the html object-model yet it's start & end tags are *optional*.

**See also:** `body`, `DTD`, `frameset`, `head`, `html`

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Other**

---

Contained in: `html`

---

Can contain: **Required** `title` element (just one); *optional* `base` and `isindex` elements; zero or more `link`, `meta`, `object`, `script` or `style` elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

`lang`: - see `language-attributes`

---

`profile` (URI) named dictionary of meta info

---

**See also:** `base`, `isindex`, `head`, `link`, `meta`, `object`, `script`, `style`, `title`

## profile:

`profile` was never seriously adopted, and has been **dropped** in HTML5.

**optional tags:**

See [the section](#) under `html`.

# hr - Horizontal rule

**Syntax:** `<hr>`

**Description:** `hr` is possibly one of the simplest html elements: it draws a horizontal rule across the page. If you want to use it for purely decorative purposes, then using *style* (eg `border-top`) on a suitable block element will be far better.

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<a href="#">applet</a> , <a href="#">blockquote</a> , <a href="#">body</a> , <a href="#">button</a> , <a href="#">center</a> , <a href="#">dd</a> , <a href="#">del</a> , <a href="#">div</a> , <a href="#">fieldset</a> , <a href="#">form</a> , <a href="#">iframe</a> , <a href="#">ins</a> , <a href="#">li</a> , <a href="#">map</a> , <a href="#">noframes</a> , <a href="#">noscript</a> , <a href="#">object</a> , <a href="#">td</a> , <a href="#">th</a>
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	(left center right) horizontal alignment (deprecated)
<code>noshade</code>	(a solid line) (deprecated)
<code>size</code>	(pixels) height (deprecated)
<code>width</code>	(pixels or %) (deprecated)

# html - HTML document

**Syntax:** `<html>...</html>`

**Description:** `html` contains the HTML *document*. Curiously, and exactly like `body`, it is **Required** within the `html` object-model (it is the top-level container), yet it's start & end tags are *optional*.

**See also:** `body`, `DTD`, `frameset`, `head`

**Properties:**

---

Content model: `Other`

---

Contained in: (`html` is the top-level container)

---

Can contain: `4.01 Strict`: `head` then `body`  
`4.01 Loose`: (same as Strict)  
`4.01 Frameset`: `head` then `frameset`

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

`lang`: - see `language-attributes`

---

`version` (`DTD`) (deprecated in favour of DOCTYPE)

---

**version:**

This is a kind of `DTD lite` (and thoroughly **deprecated** in HTML4). An example is:

```
"-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
```

**(optional tags):**

Both opening and end-tags for `html` are *optional* in HTML4 (but not xml), and you will find that to be *very* rare in this PDF.

Immediately before introduction of HTML4, the designers were faced with the issue of an existing base of tens of *millions* of `html` pages (that number is now *billions*) that—by definition—were not HTML4. A very great number of those documents had neither `html` nor `head` nor `body` tags.

It seems clear that the HTML4 designers opted for optional tags to give the best chance for those earlier documents to validate in HTML4 browsers. In this, as with so much else, they were thwarted by the browser designers...

*Always* use opening/closing tags for `html`/`head`/`body` in your own `html` docs. If you do not then the browser will declare your work to be 'Quirky', rather than 'Compliant', and may not give a reliable display for every component, possibly leading to a case of *screaming hab-nabs* in the author.

### ***i*** - ***Italic text***

**Syntax:** `<i>...</i>`

**Description:** `em` and `i` text are normally rendered the *same as each other* in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: [Inline](#)

---

Contained in: [Block-level](#) + [Inline](#) elements

---

Can contain: [Inline](#) elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

**Attributes:**

---

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

---

# iframe - Inline frame

**Syntax:** `<iframe>...</iframe>`

**Description:** `iframe` is used to create an inline subwindow. It is beloved of advertisers, as the space occupied is owned entirely by the domain that provides the `src`, regardless of the URL in the address bar. It is deprecated in HTML4 in favour of `object`.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	vertical or horizontal alignment
<code>frameborder</code>	(0 1) (default 1) request frame borders?
<code>height</code>	frame height
<code>longdesc</code>	(URI) link to long description
<code>marginheight</code>	margin height in pixels
<code>marginwidth</code>	margin widths in pixels
<code>name</code>	name of frame for targetting
<code>scrolling</code>	(yes no auto) (default auto) scrollbar or none
<code>src</code>	source of frame content
<code>width</code>	frame width

# img - Inline image

**Syntax:** ``

**Description:** `img` is an embedded image.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> except <a href="#">pre</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	<a href="#">vertical or horizontal alignment (deprecated)</a>
<code>alt</code>	short description <span>Required</span>
<code>border</code>	<a href="#">link border width (deprecated)</a>
<code>height</code>	(pixels or %) override height
<code>hspace</code>	<a href="#">horizontal gutter (deprecated)</a>
<code>ismap</code>	use server-side image map
<code>longdesc</code>	URI link to long description
<code>name</code>	name of image for scripting
<code>src</code>	URI of image to embed <span>Required</span>
<code>usemap</code>	use client-side image map
<code>vspace</code>	<a href="#">vertical gutter (deprecated)</a>
<code>width</code>	(pixels or %) override width

**alt:**

The alt description will be shown whilst the image loads (or instead if it fails to load); consider also that many folks use browsers that are text only.



### **height:**

### **width:**

Using the height and width attributes can assist with perceived page load speeds: the browser will reserve that space for the image immediately if used, whilst it has to wait for the images to arrive to calculate the space required if not.

## input - Form input

**Syntax:** `<input type="text" name="something">`

**Description:** `input` provides controls to facilitate user input, and is most often used within a `form`, although beware that some pre-HTML4 browsers will not show the control outside of a form.

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements, <a href="#">inline</a> elements except <a href="#">button</a>
Can contain:	(empty)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>accept</code>	list of MIME types for file upload ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
<code>accesskey</code>	accessibility key character
<code>align</code>	(top middle bottom left right) vertical or horizontal image alignment (deprecated)
<code>alt</code>	short description
<code>checked</code>	for radio buttons and check boxes
<code>disabled</code>	
<code>ismap</code>	use server-side image map
<code>maxlength</code>	max chars for text fields
<code>name</code>	submit as part of form <span>Required</span>
<code>onblur</code>	(script) the element lost the focus
<code>onchange</code>	(script) the element value was changed
<code>onfocus</code>	(script) the element got the focus
<code>onselect</code>	(script) some text was selected
<code>readonly</code>	for text and passwd
<code>size</code>	specific to each type of field
<code>src</code>	for fields with images

## Reference Guide:- HTML

tabindex	position in tabbing order
type	(button checkbox file hidden image password radio reset submit text) what kind of widget is needed
usemap	(URL) use client-side image map
value	Specify for radio buttons and checkboxes

***id="...":***

***name="...":***

The **Required** *name* attribute of every `input` element is sent to the server on form submission as part of a set of name/value pairings; the 'name' part of the pair comes from the `input`'s *name* attribute, whilst the value depends on both the type of `input` and the user's input to that control.

***namespaces:***

The html writer needs to bear in mind both that *name* & *id* share the same name-space, and also that each needs to be unique within the document (each form control in the document also needs to have a unique name). The easiest way to do this is to specify both when defining the control.

***type="button":***

***type="reset":***

***type="submit":***

`button` is a push-button for use with client-side scripting. `value` gives the button text-label whilst, typically, `onclick` would be used to define the script action. The two snippets below achieve the same result; the second avoids a non-functioning button for those with JavaScript disabled (the "explode()" function would also need to be defined in an earlier `script` element):

```
<input type="button" value="Blow up your computer" name="explode"
id="explode" onclick="explode()">

<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
    document.write("<input type=\"button\" value=\"Blow up your computer\"
        + \"name=\"explode\" id=\"explode\"
        + \"onclick=\"explode()\">");
// -->
</script>
```

`reset` + `submit` will also create buttons with those default actions; the `value` attribute is optional, and will over-ride the default browser text for the button. As with other controls, the *name* attribute will determine what value is sent to the server when the button is pressed; this allows multiple 'submit' buttons to be placed on a form, and for different actions to be taken according to which one is pressed.

**type="checkbox":**

**type="radio":**

**checked:**

**value:**

checkbox and radio controls share all characteristics with one crucial difference: only one *radio* control can be selected at a time, whilst *any* checkbox control may be selected. Each is placed in a group by specifying the same *name* attribute; note that they will be received at the server in an *array* which has the same base name-element as the *name* attribute (in the example below as "ice\_cream[]"). The value returned is that of the *value* attribute for that specific control (empty for non-checked controls).

Some older browsers will insist that one of a radio group is selected at all times. It is good practice, in any case, to always define one of a radio group as *checked*.

Here is a typical usage:

```
<p>Please indicate your favourite ice-cream:</p>
<p>
<label accesskey="S"><input type="radio" name="ice_cream"
value="strawberry"><span style="text-
decoration:underline;">S</span>trawberry</label><br>
<label accesskey="C"><input type="radio" name="ice_cream"
value="chocolate"><span style="text-
decoration:underline;">C</span>hocolate</label><br>
<label accesskey="V"><input type="radio" name="ice_cream"
value="vanilla"><span style="text-
decoration:underline;">V</span>anilla</label><br>
<label accesskey="A"><input type="radio" name="ice_cream" value="all"
checked="checked"><span style="text-decoration:underline;">A</span>ll of
them!</label>
</p>
```

**type="file":**

**accept:**

(one of the dangerous controls – hackers love to discover if the html writer has left holes in their security with controls such as this)

This is intended to create a method of uploading a file to the server. *value* is intended to specify the name of the initial file, yet is ignored by many browsers. *accept* is supposed to be a comma-separated list of acceptable media types, and is also ignored by many browsers. The specific *method* and *enctype* below are **Required** for this type of action:

```
<form method=post action="/dev/null" enctype="multipart/form-data">
<p>Select a document to upload for our urgent attention.</p>
<p><input type="file" name="file" accept="text/plain"></p>
<p><input type="submit" value="hurry!"></p>
</form>
```

### **type="hidden":**

hidden controls are not displayed but, in all other respects, are treated as normal controls; this means that their *name+value* is submitted together with all other controls. They are therefore often used to carry information across between several linked forms.

It is important to realise that hidden controls *can* be viewed by anyone that looks at the html source.

```
<input type="hidden" name="oliver" value="is very short">
<input type="hidden" name="rebuttall" value="You are ugly, whilst I am
young and will grow">
```

### **type="image":**

#### **alt, usemap + src:**

image defines a *graphical* submit button; `src` is then **Required** as the URL for the image and `alt` (new in HTML4) as replacement text for those not loading images. Pre- HTML4 browsers often use `name` or `value` as the replacement for `alt`, which means specifying all 3 to remain backwards compatible! Authors will probably want to use `button` instead, which can easily have an image specified for it.

When clicked, the co-ordinates of the click are sent together with the form submission as *name.x=x-value* and *name.y=y-value*, where *name* is the value of the `name` attribute, *x-value* is the click's pixels from the left of the image, and *y-value* is the click's pixels from the top of the image. The `usemap` attribute combined with this `type` defines a client-side image map that can be used with client-side scripting. The `usemap` attribute gives the url of the defining *map*.

Phew!

### **type="password":**

### **type="text":**

#### **maxlength + size:**

password is a specialised form of `text` control in which characters input by the user are masked (often as asterisks) – that is the sole difference. Note, however, that—unless the page is secure (sent under SSL encryption, shown by a “https” prefix)—that all form values are sent in clear text, including password controls.

`text` is the default form of `input` control, and specifies a single-line text-input control. Any *value* attribute will specify the default text within the control after creation, whilst *size* will be a suggestion for the size of the control and `maxlength` the maximum number of characters that it will be allowed to contain. See also `textarea` for the multi-line text input control.

*Important note:* it is simplicity itself for a user to evade the restrictions enforced by browsers with `maxlength`. It is therefore important for form-handling script authors to enforce size-limits server-side.

Here is a simple username/password input routine:

```
<p>
<label accesskey="U"><span style="text-decoration:underline;">U</span>ser
name: <input type="text" name="username" size=8 maxlength=8></label><br>
<label accesskey="P"><span style="text-
decoration:underline;">P</span>assword: <input type="password" name="pw"
size=12 maxlength=12></label>
</p>
```

# ins - Inserted text

**Syntax:** `<ins>...</ins>`

**Description:** `ins` is normally rendered in a visual browser in underlined text, and is intended to indicate text inserted *in this version of the document*. It is unusual in being capable of being either a **block-level** or an **inline** element. If used in an inline context—for example, within a **paragraph**—it cannot then contain any **block-level** elements.

**See also:** `ins`, `del`

**Properties:**

Content model:	<b>Inline or Block</b>
Contained in:	<b>Block-level</b> elements, <b>inline</b> elements
Can contain:	<b>Block-level</b> elements, <b>inline</b> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <b>core-attributes</b>
<code>l8n:</code>	- see <b>language-attributes</b>
<code>events:</code>	- see <b>event attributes</b>

<code>cite</code>	(URI) info on reason for change
<code>datetime</code>	date and time of change (ISO format: “YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ssTZD”)

**`cite:`**

**`datetime:`**

**`title:`**

`cite` + `datetime` are optionally available to give a url for readers to obtain further information on the reason for the change (`cite`) and the time & date of that change (`datetime`). [W3C states](#) that “*they are primarily intended for private use (e.g. by server-side scripts collecting statistics about a site's edits), not for readers*”. A simpler method to give succinct info is via the `title` attribute (see **core-attributes**).

# isindex - Input prompt

**Syntax:** <isindex>

**Description:** isindex is a single line *prompt* (an *input* field, equivalent to:  
a *form* with a single *input* of "type="text"  
a "method="get"  
an action pointing to the url of the containing document  
). isindex is deprecated in HTML4 in favour of the *input* element.

**See also:** [base](#), [isindex](#), [head](#), [link](#), [meta](#), [object](#), [script](#), [style](#), [title](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#),  
[fieldset](#), [iframe](#), [head](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#),  
[noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

---

Can contain: (empty)

---

Standard: [HTML 4.01 Loose](#), [HTML 3.2 Final](#), [HTML 2.0](#)

---

**Attributes:**

---

core: - see [core-attributes](#)

---

i18n: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

events: - see [event attributes](#)

---

---

prompt prompt message (effectively, the label)

---

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#),  
[select](#), [textarea](#)



# **kbd - Text to be input**

**Syntax:**      `<kbd>...</kbd>`

**Description:** kbd text is normally rendered in a visual browser as monospaced text.

**See also:**    [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### **Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### **Attributes:**

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# label - Form field label

**Syntax:** `<label>...</label>`

**Description:** `label` is a main usability aspect of `form`. The key feature is that the `label` must NOT contain (or be associated with) more than one field.

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements, <a href="#">inline</a> elements except <a href="#">button</a>
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements except <a href="#">label</a>
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>l18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>accesskey</code>	accessibility key character
<code>for</code>	matches field ID value
<code>onblur</code>	(script) the element lost the focus
<code>onfocus</code>	(script) the element got the focus

The association between `label` and a control can be implicit (the label directly contains the field) or explicit – this latter is achieved by the `for` attribute ([below](#)). The association thus created then assists speech-browser users whilst also allowing visual browser GUI features: eg clicking on the label will select the associated radio/checkbox control.

### Implicit association:

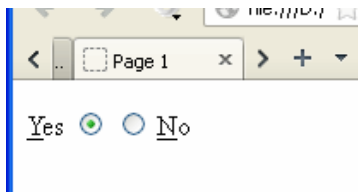
Below, each of 2 labels contain a *radio* control, the 1<sup>st</sup> for “Yes” and the 2<sup>nd</sup> for “No”. Each label is therefore *implicitly* associated with the label that they contain. A snapshot of what this html code produces within FireFox is below the code.

The *accesskey* will allow the radios to be controlled via the keyboard. In addition, hovering the mouse cursor above either text will highlight the associated control, and a click will select it.

## Reference Guide:- HTML

*Note:* these are all *inline* elements. Therefore, even though the opening label element, text, radio control and closing label element are all (deliberately) on different lines, the whole thing is displayed in the browser on the same line:

```
<p>
<label accesskey="Y">
<span style="text-decoration:underline;">Y</span>es
<input type="radio" name="ice_cream" value="1" checked="checked">
</label>
<label accesskey="N">
<input type="radio" name="ice_cream" value="0">
<span style="text-decoration:underline;">N</span>o
</label>
</p>
```



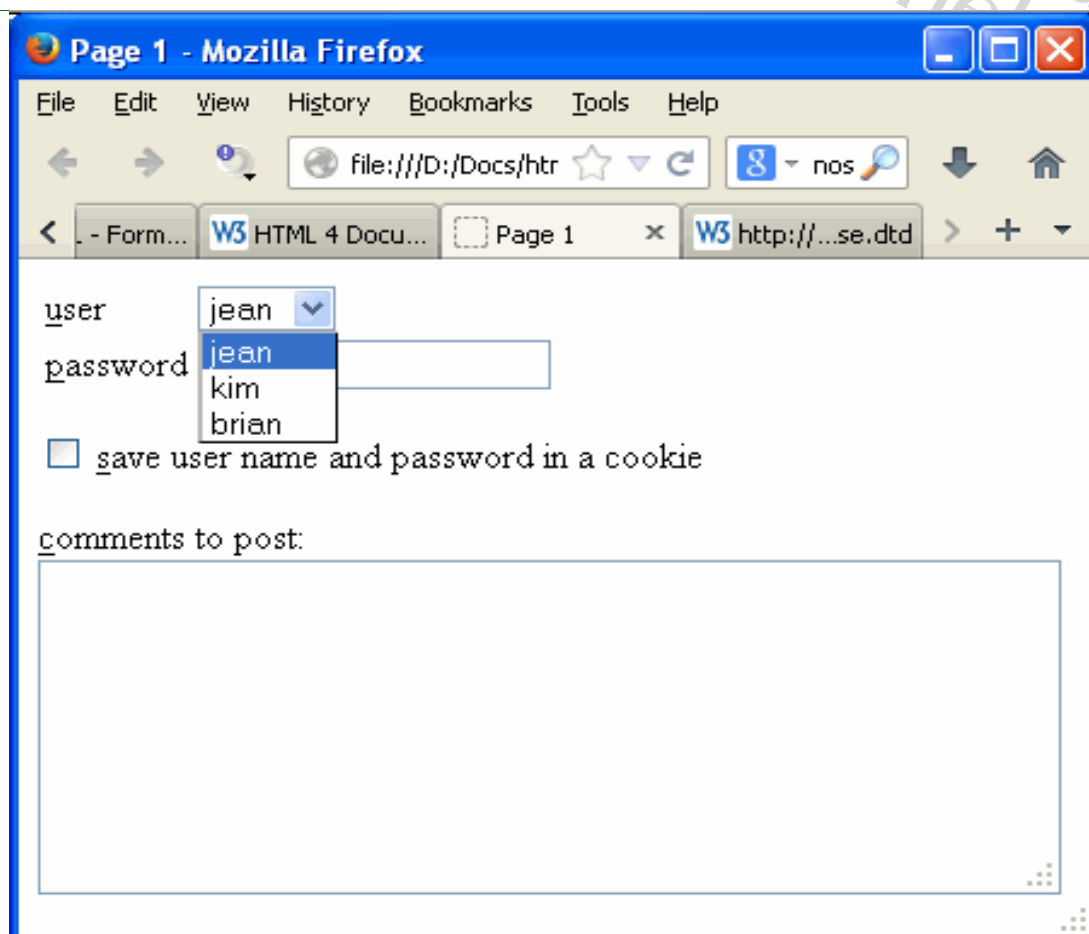
**for:**

**id:**

### *Explicit association:*

It is very common for the label to be separated from the control; in that situation, the `for` attribute in the label is used to link with the `id` attribute in the control (`id` is one of the *core-attributes* for every element). Below is a table arrangement, with the results shown below the html:

```
<table><tr>
  <td>
    <label for="user" accesskey="u">
      <span style="text-decoration:underline;">u</span>ser
    </label>
  </td>
  <td>
    <select name="user" id="user">
      <option>jean</option>
      <option>kim</option>
      <option>brian</option>
    </select>
  </td>
</tr><tr>
  <td>
    <label for="passwd" accesskey="p">
      <span style="text-decoration:underline;">p</span>assword
    </label>
  </td>
  <td><input type="password" name="password" id="passwd"></td>
</tr></table>
<p>
  <label accesskey="s">
    <input type="checkbox" name="save" value="yes">
    <span style="text-decoration:underline;">s</span>ave user name and
    password in a cookie
  </label>
</p>
<p>
  <label accesskey="c">
    <span style="text-decoration:underline;">c</span>omments to post:
    <textarea name="comments" rows=8 cols=50></textarea>
  </label>
</p>
```



# legend - Fieldset caption

**Syntax:** `<legend>...</legend>`

**Description:** `legend` gives the caption for a group of related controls within a form; it *\*must\** be the first item of a `fieldset`.

**See also:** `button`, `fieldset`, `form`, `input`, `label`, `legend`, `optgroup`, `option`, `select`, `textarea`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>fieldset</code>
Can contain:	Inline elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <code>core-attributes</code>
<code>l18n:</code>	- see <code>language-attributes</code>
<code>events:</code>	- see <code>event attributes</code>
<code>accesskey</code>	accessibility key character
<code>align</code>	(top bottom left right) relative to fieldset (deprecated)

This is what it can look like:

```
<form method="post" action="/cgi-bin/order.cgi">
  <fieldset>
    <legend accesskey="i">contact information</legend>
    <table>
      ...
    </table>
  </fieldset>
</form>
```

### li - List item

**Syntax:** `<li>...</li>`

**Description:** `li` defines a *list* item, and is the element that contains the actual content.

**See also:** `li`, `ol`, `ul`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>ol</code> , <code>ul</code>
Can contain:	Inline elements, block-level elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>type</code>	(both OL + UL types) (deprecated)
<code>value</code>	(number) start number for the sequence (deprecated)

**type:**

**value:**

Both govern the *style* of presentation of the bullet, and thus are **deprecated** in HTML4.01 Strict. `type` must be one of the `ol` . `type` if contained in an `ol`, and one of the `ul` . `type` if contained in a `ul`. Likewise, `value` only makes sense if the `li` is contained within an `ol`.

See [the whole thing](#) for a set of nested `li` elements in a browser.

# link - Document relationship

**Syntax:** <link>

**Description:** link (zero, one or many) defines document *relationships*. See bottom for discussion & examples.

**See also:** base, isindex, head, link, meta, object, script, style, title

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
----------------	-------

Contained in:	head
---------------	------

Can contain:	(empty)
--------------	---------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0
-----------	--

**Attributes:**

core:	- see core-attributes
-------	-----------------------

i18n:	- see language-attributes
-------	---------------------------

events:	- see event attributes
---------	------------------------

charset	char encoding of linked resource (RFC2045)
---------	--

href	(URI) URI for linked resource
------	-------------------------------

hreflang	language code (RFC1766)
----------	-------------------------

media	(1, or comma-separated list) for rendering on these media
-------	---

rel	(LinkTypes) forward link types
-----	--------------------------------

rev	(LinkTypes) reverse link types
-----	--------------------------------

type	advisory content type (RFC2045)
------	---------------------------------

**rel:**

**rev:**

The W3C authors had a *book* type of format in mind when these two attributes were put in place. A handful of examples using some *LinkTypes* originally defined in HTML4 should help explain that better:

- <link rel="prev" href="page6182.html" title="My Sister's Annoying habits">
- <link rel="next" href="page6184.html" title="My Sister's Annoying habits">
- <link rel="start" href="page1.html" title="My Sister's Annoying habits">
- <link rel="index" href="index.html" title="My Sister - Index">

(cont. next page)

This above kind of *LinkTypes* (note: case-insensitive) are almost entirely ignored by visual browsers and, in my experience, only serve to uselessly inflate the document size whilst providing lots of urls for [hi-speed scrapers](#); my general advice would be to ignore them. That advice completely changes with regard to specific *LinkTypes* which are required for specific purposes:

### **rel=apple-touch-icon:**

### **rel=shortcut icon:**

These were introduced by Microsoft for MSIE with the '*shortcut icon*' (and break the W3C stipulation that *LinkTypes* should not contain a space) (*doh!*). Internet Explorer was ubiquitous at the time, web-server error\_logs were filling up with 404s for missing '*favicon.ico*' files (intended to be placed at the root of the web-space, or in a specified location) and, essentially, everyone jumped on board, so it is now a standard. If the *favicon* was not specified in the [head](#) browsers would try to find the file—default name: '*favicon.ico*'—in *every* wretched sub-directory, so I advise a belt 'n' braces action, with a file called '*favicon.ico*' in the root of the web-space & also a `rel` element specifying an *absolute* URI for where & what it is.

Apple have taken lessons from MS in non-compliance and added '*sizes*' as an extra attribute for use under iOS (iPhone, iPad, iPod, iBall, etc.) (default: 57x57), but at least their *favicon* is a PNG file (a well-supported graphic format), whilst MS went for ICO (another, but poorly-supported, graphic format – try a [favicon generator site](#)). To rub salt in the wound, Apple will [search for four different filenames](#) (I've just checked & yup, 2 of those are in my error logs; grr). '*apple-touch-icon.png*' is the most widely-used default name. Advice is the same as for the *favicon*.

Here are two examples:

```
<link rel="shortcut icon" href="favicon.ico" type="image/x-icon">
<link rel="apple-touch-icon" href="apple-touch-icon.png" type="image/png">
```

*Notes:* the `href` above is a *relative* URL, which will rely upon a [base](#) element being used for accurate translation by the browser (see [absolute v's relative URIs](#)) (or better, as you probably do not want a *favicon* in every directory, enter an *absolute* URI).

### **rel=StyleSheet:**

### **rel=alternate stylesheet:**

Coupled together with a [meta](#) element, this is the advised method for including an external *StyleSheet* in to the document. Here is an example:

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css">
<link rel="StyleSheet" href="style.css" type="text/css"
media="screen,projection,print">
```

*Notes:* the `href` above is a *relative* URL, which may rely upon a [base](#) element being used for accurate translation by the browser (see [absolute v's relative URIs](#)) (or better, as you probably do not want a style document in every directory, enter an *absolute* URI). See also [attaching style to HTML](#).



### map - Image map

**Syntax:** `<map name="mapname">...</map>`

**Description:** map is a client-side image map. The **Required** name attribute is used as an anchor for the usemap attribute of an `img` or `object`.

HTML4 has extended the map element so that it can contain one or more **block-level** elements—such as `object`—in addition to the `area` element.

**See also:** `a`, `bdo`, `br`, `img`, `map`, `object`, `q`, `script`, `span`, `sub`, `sup`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Inline
----------------	--------

Contained in:	Block-level + inline elements
---------------	-------------------------------

Can contain:	One or more block-level, or one or more area elements
--------------	---

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	----------------------------------

**Attributes:**

core:	- see core-attributes
-------	-----------------------

i18n:	- see language-attributes
-------	---------------------------

events:	- see event attributes
---------	------------------------

name	for reference by usemap
------	-------------------------

Required
----------

Here is a typical pre- HTML4 usage of map:

```
<map name="mymap">
<area href="/reference/" alt="html and css reference" coords="5,5,95,195">
<area href="/design/" alt="design guide" coords="105,5,195,195">
<area href="/tools/" alt="tools" coords="205,5,295,195">
</map>

```

### menu - Menu list

**Syntax:** `<menu>...</menu>`

**Description:** `menu` is an *unordered* list of items for a menu (**deprecated** in HTML 4 Strict in favour of `ul`). Note that the contained `li` elements are NOT allowed to contain **block-level** elements, which prevents cascading menus.

**See also:** `dir`, `li`, `menu`, `ol`, `ul`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>applet</code> , <code>blockquote</code> , <code>body</code> , <code>button</code> , <code>center</code> , <code>dd</code> , <code>del</code> , <code>div</code> , <code>fieldset</code> , <code>form</code> , <code>iframe</code> , <code>ins</code> , <code>li</code> , <code>map</code> , <code>noframes</code> , <code>noscript</code> , <code>object</code> , <code>td</code> , <code>th</code>
Can contain:	One or more <code>li</code> elements (which cannot contain <b>block-level</b> elements)
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <b>core-attributes</b>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <b>language-attributes</b>
<code>events:</code>	- see <b>event attributes</b>
<code>compact</code>	display in a compact style (deprecated)

**compact:**

`compact` is poorly supported by browsers.

# meta - Metadata

**Syntax:** <meta>

**Description:** meta (zero, one or many) defines *generic metainformation*. The W3C never defines what this might be.

**See also:** [base](#), [isindex](#), [head](#), [link](#), [meta](#), [object](#), [script](#), [style](#), [title](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
----------------	-------

Contained in:	head
---------------	------

Can contain:	(empty)
--------------	---------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0
-----------	--

**Attributes:**

lang:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
-------	---

content	associated information	Required
---------	------------------------	----------

http-equiv	HTTP response header name
------------	---------------------------

name	metainformation name
------	----------------------

scheme	select form of content (rarely used)
--------	--------------------------------------

Certain meta elements have become *de rigueur* in every html document:

**content:**  
**name:**

name/content are the classic *name/value* pairings found throughout this PDF. content can contain text or entities but never HTML tags. The following are typical but never required:

**name=author:**

Everyone likes their work to be recognised.

**name=description:**  
**name=keywords:**

SEs ("Search Engines") will often use all/part of the *description* in the SERPs ("Search Engine Results Pages"). Keep it concise.

*Keywords* (comma-separated values) have become much abused across the years; SEs will penalise the page if you practise keyword-stuffing.

### **name=robots:**

You need a file called '[robots.txt](#)' in the root of your web-space. Please be aware that there are bots that give a little back after scraping your site ("goodbots") & others that are scraping your site [for their sole benefit](#) ("badbots"). In particular, using [robots.txt](#) to detail all the sensitive directories on your site is a gift to the *badbots*.

'[robots.txt](#)' is a site-wide declaration for general and/or specific bots. If you wish to make a page-specific declaration it can be done via the `name` attribute (note: the page needs then to be accessible to the bots):

- `<meta name="robots" content="...,...">`

'robots' declares that this declaration is for all bots. Use the bot-specific name to direct it at a specific bot (try [robotstxt.org](#) for a list).

`content` (comma-separated, case-insensitive values) are the directives. There are zero directives in law; what exist are through convention & usage. The following are generally agreed, and for best in one statement:

- `all`  
= "index, follow"  
no restrictions; robots consider this to be the default
- `noindex`  
noshown in SERPs + no 'cached' link
- `nofollow`  
do not follow the links on this page
- `none`  
= "noindex, nofollow"

### **http-equiv:**

(The value is case-sensitive)

HTML documents transmitted across the Internet are sent via the HTTP protocol ("*Hypertext Transfer Protocol*"). HTTP packets have a Header+Body format just like the HTML documents that they contain. The document itself is placed within the body of those packets, whilst the header contains important *metadata* about content within the body. A Web Browser makes use of both HTTP headers & body in making decisions on how it will render the HTML document into a web-page.

Ideally, an HTML writer needs to have control over both parts of the HTTP packets; the `meta` element + `http-equiv` attribute offers a possibility of doing this even if—as one example—the HTML document is being sent via email. Some web-servers can be configured to auto-send HTTP headers that are contained within the `meta` element, whilst most browsers will also take account of this element. Even if yours is a dedicated server, this author advises a belt 'n' braces approach (send headers + include `meta` statements) as long as the two do not conflict.

### **http-equiv=Content-Type:**

This is one of the valuable declarations, but can have a downside if the *charset* is different to the browser default, in which case it may re-load the page (one of many where the HTTP headers are essential). Here is an example:

- `<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8">`

## Reference Guide:- HTML

### ***http-equiv=Content-Script-Type:***

This is necessary to include *inline* JavaScript script.

- `<meta http-equiv="Content-Script-Type" content="text/javascript">`

### ***http-equiv=Content-Style-Type:***

This is necessary to include *inline* style. See also [link rel=StyleSheet](#) for loading an *external* CSS file:

- `<meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css">`

### ***http-equiv=Refresh:***

This can be controversial, messes up the browser history (and thus the ‘Back’ button), has been much misused in the past and can also lead to the SEs penalising the page (particularly for short-duration refreshes).

It will cause the page to be refreshed after the interval marked (in seconds), optionally loading a completely different page (making the first page a kind of “splash screen”). You should note that most modern browsers default to “*no-refresh*”:

- `<meta http-equiv="Refresh" content="10; url=/another.html">`

# **noframes - Frames alternate content**

**Syntax:** `<noframes>...</noframes>`

**Description:** `noframes` is designed for content to be shown when *frames* cannot be shown (in this way it is the *frames* equivalent of `noscript`). The W3C advice is to *always* have a `noframes` section in a `Frameset` document.

**See also:** `body`, `frame`, `frameset`, `head`, `iframe`, `noframes`, `noscript`

**Properties:**

---

Content model: `Block`

---

Contained in: `applet`, `blockquote`, `body`, `button`, `center`, `dd`, `del`, `div`, `fieldset`, `form`, `iframe`, `ins`, `li`, `map`, `noframes`, `noscript`, `object`, `td`, `th`

---

Can contain: `4.01 Loose`: `block-level` elements, `inline` elements  
`4.01 Frameset`: one `body` element, which must NOT contain any `noframes` elements

---

Standard: `HTML 4.01 Frameset`

---

**Attributes:**

---

`core`: - see `core-attributes`

---

`l18n`: - see `language-attributes`

---

`events`: - see `event attributes`

---

### **how to hack-off your users:**

All the `Frameset` elements are new in HTML4, which meant at HTML4 introduction that all previous (html3.2 & earlier) browsers did not present the *frames* correctly. Many html authors put a message in `noframes` saying: “Upgrade your browser”. Some of the new HTML4 browsers made it possible for their users to switch frames-display *off* meaning that, for these folks, “Upgrade your browser” was all that they saw. Now, make a careful note of this; should you ever want to utterly wind up your user-base, that is a perfectly wonderful way to do it.

### **a guide to content:**

A set of links to the other frames (`frame.src` URLs) is probably enough.

### **noframes in 4 Transitional:**

Probably a good idea, if only the browser will support it (it will always show the `noframes` content if not).

See [how the W3C frames it](#) for the full picture.

# ***noscript* - Alternate script content**

**Syntax:**      `<noscript>...</noscript>`

**Description:** `noscript` is... odd.

**See also:**     `script`

**Properties:**

---

Content model: **Block**

---

Contained in: `applet`, `blockquote`, `body`, `button`, `center`, `dd`, `del`, `div`, `fieldset`, `form`, `iframe`, `ins`, `li`, `map`, `noframes`, `noscript`, `object`, `td`, `th`

---

Can contain:    **Block-level** elements, **inline** elements

---

Standard:        HTML 4.01 Strict

---

The W3C describes `noscript` as an “*alternate content container for non script-based rendering*”. It is customary to place it within the `html` immediately following any `script` element, but note that there is zero connection within the DTD between the two; effectively, that means that there should only be one pair of `noscript` tags within a document. Today, most `html` authors appear to use this element to warn the visitor that they will not see anything on the page unless scripting is enabled in their browser.

One issue arises if the browser has scripting *enabled* but does not support the specific language, when browsers may fail to support `noscript` (a browser with client-side scripting *disabled* should be unaffected).

## object - Object

**Syntax:** <object>...</object>

**Description:** object is a generic embedded object. It was intended to replace the [img](#) + [applet](#) elements & particularly proprietary elements such as the Netscape *embed* or Microsoft *bgsound*.

**See also:** [param](#)

**See also:** [base](#), [isindex](#), [head](#), [link](#), [meta](#), [object](#), [script](#), [style](#), [title](#)

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	One or more <a href="#">block-level</a> , or one or more <a href="#">area</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

align	<a href="#">vertical or horizontal alignment (deprecated)</a>
archive	space-separated list of URIs
border	<a href="#">link border width (deprecated)</a>
classid	identifies an implementation
codebase	base URI for classid, data, archive
codetype	content type for code
data	reference to object's data
declare	declare but don't instantiate flag
height	(pixels or %) override height
hspace	<a href="#">horizontal gutter (deprecated)</a>
name	submit as part of form
standby	message to show while loading
tabindex	position in tabbing order
type	content type for data
usemap	use client-side image map
vspace	<a href="#">vertical gutter (deprecated)</a>
width	(pixels or %) override width



## ol - Ordered list

**Syntax:** `<ol>...</ol>`

**Description:** `ol` is an *ordered* list of items. A browser will normally supply the numbering for the content.

**See also:** [li](#), [ol](#), [ul](#)

**Properties:**

Content model: [Block](#)

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

Can contain: One or more [li](#) elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

`compact` [display in a compact style \(deprecated\)](#)

`start` [\(number\) \(default: 1\) start number for the sequence \(deprecated\)](#)

`type` [\(1|a|A|i|I\) style for bullet \(deprecated\)](#)

**type:**

`type` governs the *style* of presentation of the bullet allotted to the contained [li](#) elements, and thus is [deprecated](#) in HTML4.01 Strict. The value is a single digit, and these are interpreted as follows:

1	arabic numbers	1, 2, 3, ...
a	lower alpha	a, b, c, ...
A	upper alpha	A, B, C, ...
i	lower roman	i, ii, iii, ...
I	upper roman	I, II, III, ...

See [the whole thing](#) for a set of nested [li](#) elements in a browser.

# optgroup - Option group

**Syntax:** `<optgroup label="(text)">...</optgroup>`

**Description:** `select`, `optgroup` and `option` together are intended to create a cascading set of menus.

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">select</a>
Can contain:	One or more <a href="#">option</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>	
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>	
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>	
<code>disabled</code>		
<code>label</code>	for use in hierarchical menus	<b>Required</b>

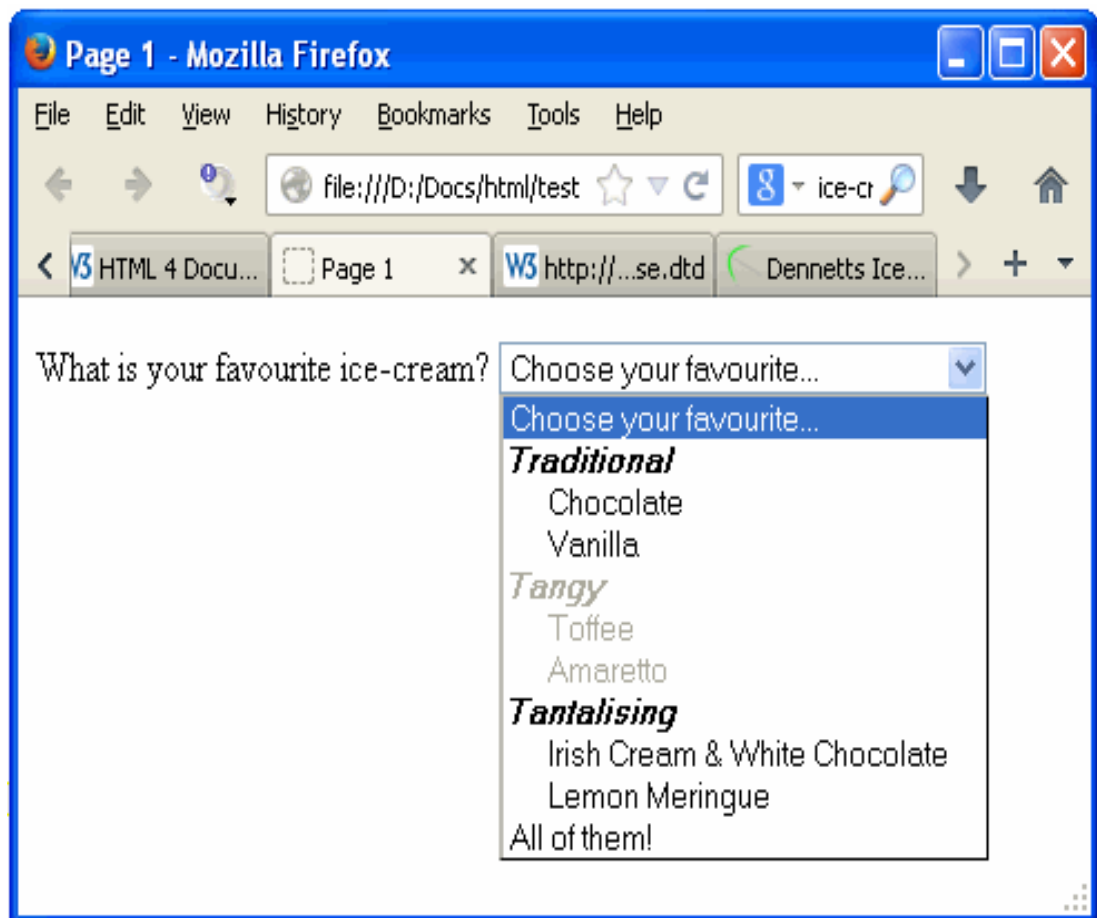
See next page for a demonstration...

### label:

label is **Required** on optgroup but optional on option. The easiest way to explain these is to demonstrate it (as below). Note the use of selected with an empty value to provide a default heading to the menu group:

```
<p>What is your favourite ice-cream?
<select name="ice_cream">
  <option selected="" value="">Choose your favourite...</option>
  <optgroup label="Traditional">
    <option value="choc">Chocolate</option>
    <option value="vanilla">Vanilla</option>
  </optgroup>
  <optgroup label="Tangy" disabled="disabled">
    <option value="toffee">Toffee</option>
    <option value="amaretto">Amaretto</option>
  </optgroup>
  <optgroup label="Tantalising">
    <option value="irish">Irish Cream & White Chocolate</option>
    <option value="lemon">Lemon Meringue</option>
  </optgroup>
  <option>All of them!</option>
</select>
</p>
```

...and the result in a browser:



...with many thanks to [Dennetts of Spilsby](#) for some delicious suggestions!

# option - Menu option

**Syntax:** `<option>...</option>`

**Description:** `option` is the menu option(s) available within a menu.

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">select</a>
Can contain:	One or more <a href="#">option</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>disabled</code>	
<code>label</code>	for use in hierarchical menus
<code>selected</code>	default selected value
<code>value</code>	defaults to element content

### selected:

The option marked as `selected` will be pre-selected at menu construction. Sometimes, you do not want any option to be selected (allowing a possible NULL response) and, in addition, may want to give a short hint at the top of the menu. Using “`selected value=""`” will achieve that.

### value:

On form submission, the `value` of the selected option will be posted. If `value` is missing, then the (text) content of the option is sent instead.

See the page following [optgroup](#) for a full demonstration...

### p - Paragraph

**Syntax:** `<p>...</p>`

**Description:** `p` defines a *paragraph* element. One curiosity is that it can only contain [inline](#) elements, and another is that the end-tag is optional with `html` (although that can then lead to stylesheet bugs with some browsers).

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">applet</a> , <a href="#">blockquote</a> , <a href="#">body</a> , <a href="#">button</a> , <a href="#">center</a> , <a href="#">dd</a> , <a href="#">del</a> , <a href="#">div</a> , <a href="#">fieldset</a> , <a href="#">form</a> , <a href="#">iframe</a> , <a href="#">ins</a> , <a href="#">li</a> , <a href="#">map</a> , <a href="#">noframes</a> , <a href="#">noscript</a> , <a href="#">object</a> , <a href="#">td</a> , <a href="#">th</a>
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>align</code>	<a href="#">(left center right justify)</a> horizontal alignment of content (deprecated)

# param - Object parameter

**Syntax:** `<param name=" (the_name) ">`

**Description:** `param` is a “named property value”. It is designed to provide parameter values to the `applet` or `object` element that contains it, and MUST be the first content within that element. `id` / `name` is the name of the parameter, whilst `value` is it's value.

**See also:** `object`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
----------------	-------

Contained in:	<code>applet</code> , <code>object</code>
---------------	---

Can contain:	(empty)
--------------	---------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	----------------------------------

**Attributes:**

<code>id</code>	document-wide unique id (also a <a href="#">core-attribute</a> )
-----------------	--

<code>name</code>	property name
-------------------	---------------

<code>type</code>	content type for value when <code>valuetype="ref"</code> ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
-------------------	--

<code>value</code>	property value
--------------------	----------------

<code>valuetype</code>	(data object ref) (default: data) How to interpret <code>value</code>
------------------------	---

**id:**

**name:**

The html author needs to bear in mind both that `name` & `id` share the same name-space, and also that each needs to be unique within the document. The simplest method is *always* to specify both whenever either are used.

# pre - Pre-formatted text

**Syntax:** `<pre>...</pre>`

**Description:** `pre` contains preformatted text. Importantly, `pre` does NOT collapse whitespace and (unfortunately) will not wordwrap (that latter can be overcome with some style *black magic*) which can lead to side-scanning if the screen width is insufficient.

Under the hood, several [inline](#) elements are excluded, preventing any markup that will involve changes in font size or inclusion of images.

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">applet</a> , <a href="#">blockquote</a> , <a href="#">body</a> , <a href="#">button</a> , <a href="#">center</a> , <a href="#">dd</a> , <a href="#">del</a> , <a href="#">div</a> , <a href="#">fieldset</a> , <a href="#">form</a> , <a href="#">iframe</a> , <a href="#">ins</a> , <a href="#">li</a> , <a href="#">map</a> , <a href="#">noframes</a> , <a href="#">noscript</a> , <a href="#">object</a> , <a href="#">td</a> , <a href="#">th</a>
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements except <a href="#">applet</a> , <a href="#">basefont</a> , <a href="#">big</a> , <a href="#">font</a> , <a href="#">img</a> , <a href="#">object</a> , <a href="#">small</a> , <a href="#">sub</a> , <a href="#">sup</a>
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>width</code>	<a href="#">expected line length (deprecated) (ignored by browsers)</a>

### width:

`width` is ignored by browsers and, in any case, deprecated in HTML4 Strict. If that was not enough, it is a `NUMBER`, which immediately says “*of what?*” (pixels, em, en, inches, ...) (probably characters, but who knows? as it is never specified).

# q - Short Quotation

**Syntax:** `<q> . . . </q>`

**Description:** `q` text is intended to be a short, *inline* quotation; use `blockquote` for longer, *block-level* quotations.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
<code>cite</code>	URI of the source of the quotation.



# s - Strike-through text

**Syntax:** `<s>...</s>`

**Description:** `s` is normally rendered in a visual browser in a ~~strike-through~~ style.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose (deprecated in HTML4)

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

See also [strike](#)

# samp - Sample output

**Syntax:** `<samp>...</samp>`

**Description:** samp text is normally rendered in a visual browser as monospaced text.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# script - Client-side script

**Syntax:** `<script type="text/javascript">...</script>`

**Description:** `script` is intended to include *client-side script(s)* in the document.

**See also:** [base](#), [isindex](#), [head](#), [link](#), [meta](#), [object](#), [script](#), [style](#), [title](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
----------------	------------------------

Contained in:	<a href="#">head</a> , <a href="#">block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
---------------	--

Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
--------------	---------------------------------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	----------------------------------

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
--------------------	---------------------------------------

<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
--------------------	---

<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
----------------------	--

<code>charset</code>	char encoding of linked resource ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
----------------------	--

<code>defer</code>	UA may defer execution of script
--------------------	----------------------------------

<code>language</code>	<a href="#">predefined script language name</a> (deprecated)
-----------------------	--

<code>src</code>	URI for an external script
------------------	----------------------------

<code>type</code>	content type of script language ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
-------------------	---

*Required*

**See also:** [noscript](#)

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

Client-side scripts are used (and mis-used) to create greater utility within html documents. They are also the single greatest vector for abuse of multiple kinds. For that reason, the author would strongly advise you to make use of [noscript](#) in your browser, and also to bear in mind that the user may well prevent use of Script in *their* browser.

# select - Option selector

**Syntax:** `<select>...</select>`

**Description:** `select` defines a form control (menu) for the selection of options. Before HTML4 these *had* to be defined within a form.

**See also:** [button](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [input](#), [label](#), [legend](#), [optgroup](#), [option](#), [select](#), [textarea](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements, <a href="#">inline</a> elements except <a href="#">button</a>
Can contain:	One or more <a href="#">optgroup</a> or <a href="#">option</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

<code>disabled</code>	
<code>multiple</code>	default is single selection
<code>name</code>	field name
<code>onblur</code>	(script) the element lost the focus
<code>onchange</code>	(script) the element value was changed
<code>onfocus</code>	(script) the element got the focus
<code>size</code>	# rows visible
<code>tabindex</code>	position in tabbing order

### multiple: name:

The default is for just one option allowed to be selected. On submission, name/value pairs are sent: `name` is used for the name, whether as a single or as multiple pairs; see [option](#) for the value part.

### size:

`size` suggests to visual browsers how many options should be on-screen at any one time, with a scroll-bar to get access to any others.

See the page following [optgroup](#) for a full demonstration...

### **small - Small text**

**Syntax:** `<small>...</small>`

**Description:** `small` is normally rendered in a visual browser in a smaller font size. It is also possible to nest this element, which can lead to unpredictable results, as you cannot be certain of the reader's starting font size.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), `small`, [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

**Properties:**

---

Content model: [Inline](#)

---

Contained in: [Block-level](#) except [pre](#) + [inline](#) elements

---

Can contain: [Inline](#) elements

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

---

**Attributes:**

---

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

---

# span - Generic inline container

**Syntax:** `<span>...</span>`

**Description:** `span` is typically used to apply *style* to [inline](#) elements; see [div](#) for the identical application for [block-level](#) elements.

**See also:** [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# strike - Strike-through text

**Syntax:** `<strike>...</strike>`

**Description:** `strike` is normally rendered in a visual browser in a ~~strike-through~~ style. See [del](#) as a possible HTML4 replacement.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose (deprecated in HTML4), HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# **strong** - Strong emphasis

**Syntax:** `<strong>...</strong>`

**Description:** Bold and strong text are normally **rendered the same** in visual browsers.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>



# style - Embedded style sheet

**Syntax:** `<style>...</style>`

**Description:** `style` (zero, one or many) embeds a StyleSheet in the document.

**See also:** [base](#), [isindex](#), [head](#), [link](#), [meta](#), [object](#), [script](#), [style](#), [title](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	Other
----------------	-------

Contained in:	<a href="#">html</a>
---------------	----------------------

Can contain:	(embedded stylesheet)
--------------	-----------------------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	----------------------------------

**Attributes:**

<code>lang</code> :	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a> (for use with <code>title</code> )
---------------------	--

<code>media</code>	designed for use with these media
--------------------	-----------------------------------

<code>title</code>	advisory title
--------------------	----------------

<code>type</code>	content type of style language ( <a href="#">RFC2045</a> )
-------------------	--

**Required**

## media:

(Single or comma-separated list of media descriptors) With minimal original support by browsers, `media` is intended to specify the display device upon which the StyleSheet should be supported.

**Note:** Navigator4 ignores any other than 'screen' whilst Opera needs 'projection' for full-screen. The following were defined in HTML4 (but not in 4.01):

- `all` for all devices
- `aural` for speech synthesizers
- `braille` for braille tactile feedback devices
- `handheld` for handheld devices  
(characterized by a small, monochrome display and limited bandwidth) (this was well before the iPhone, etc.)
- `print` for output to a printer
- `projection` for projectors
- `screen` (default) for non-paged computer screens
- `tty` for fixed-pitch character grid displays (eg. Lynx)
- `tv` for television-type devices; low-res & limited scroll

## title:

The intention was to allow a user to selectively enable/disable particular sheets; this is minimally supported amongst browsers. Multiple sheets with the same `title` are considered to be the same StyleSheet.

**type:**

This is *always* “text/css”.

See also [link.rel=StyleSheet](#) for including an external StyleSheet.

# sub - Subscript

**Syntax:**      <sub>...</sub>

**Description:** <sub>sub</sub> (and <sup>sup</sup>) can completely ruin the run of normal text-lines, so use with some care.

**See also:**    [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

# sup - Superscript

**Syntax:**      <sup>...</sup>

**Description:** <sup>sup</sup> (and <sub>sub</sub>) can completely ruin the run of normal text-lines, so use with some care.

**See also:**    [a](#), [bdo](#), [br](#), [img](#), [map](#), [object](#), [q](#), [script](#), [span](#), [sub](#), [sup](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

## table - Table

**Syntax:** `<table>...</table>`

**Description:** `table` defines a *tabular* block of row-and-columnar data. The place where a row & column meet is called a “data cell” (`td` or `th`) and, because any data cell can also contain a `table`, it becomes possible to display some *very* complex, multi-dimensional data.

**See also:** [address](#), [blockquote](#), [div](#), [dl](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [hr](#), [noscript](#), [p](#), [table](#)

**Properties:**

Content model: [Block](#)

Contained in: [applet](#), [blockquote](#), [body](#), [button](#), [center](#), [dd](#), [del](#), [div](#), [fieldset](#), [form](#), [iframe](#), [ins](#), [li](#), [map](#), [noframes](#), [noscript](#), [object](#), [td](#), [th](#)

Can contain: An optional [caption](#), followed by zero or more [col](#) and [colgroup](#) elements, followed by an optional [thead](#) element, an optional [tfoot](#) element, and then one or more [tbody](#) elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

`l18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

`align` (left|center|right)  
table position relative to window (deprecated)

`bgcolor` (sRGB colours) background colour for cells (deprecated)

`border` (pixels) controls frame width around table

`cellpadding` (pixels or %) spacing within cells

`cellspacing` (pixels or %) spacing between cells

`frame` (void|above|below|hsides|lhs|rhs|vsides|box|border)  
which parts of frame to render

`rules` (none|groups|rows|cols|all)  
rulings between rows and cols

`summary` purpose/structure for speech output

`width` (pixels or %) table width

**See also:** [caption](#), [col](#), [colgroup](#), [tbody](#), [table](#), [td](#), [tfoot](#), [th](#), [thead](#), [tr](#)

### **align:**

### **bgcolor:**

These are **deprecated** in HTML 4.01 Strict, and are mentioned here only because, before HTML4, `table` became notorious for being used as a layout device for entire documents. One of the main design purposes in the introduction of HTML4 was to separate the aspect of SGML *presentation* from the *markup*, and this latter was achieved by the introduction of `style` and stylesheets (CSS). As mentioned **elsewhere**, **HTML4 Loose** was designed as a halfway-house (detox) whilst older html authors made the transition to using HTML4. All elements & attributes marked as 'deprecated' in this PDF will validate under a **HTML4 Loose** DTD but will fail under *HTML4 Strict*.

So, what is wrong with `table` being used as a layout device? Well, apart from producing pages that look more than a bit *naff*, `tables` have an inherent problem for users that use narrow windows, or need large fonts, or use non-visual browsers. Even for visual browsers, most will not display very much of a table until that entire markup has been downloaded which—and especially on a bad connection—can lead to a noticeable delay. Most new visitors—if the view window does not fill up quickly—these days will just press the back-button & try elsewhere.

There is only one thing that this author has found that a table can do that CSS cannot, and that is *vertically* align content in a space (`<td valign="middle">`) (although it has to be said that some other layout with CSS is also a bit of a black art).

### **border:**

### **frame:**

These 2 attributes together govern whether the table's outer border is visible, and which sides, and by what width. As always, CSS will offer far better control. These are the possible values for `frame`:

- `void` no border (default unless `border>0`)
- `above` top only
- `bottom` bottom only
- `hsides` left & right only
- `vsides` top & bottom only
- `lhs` left only
- `rhs` right only
- `box/border` border on all sides (default if `border>0`)

`<table border>` is a valid, reliable shorthand for `<table frame="border">`

### **cellpadding:**

### **cellspacing:**

These 2 attributes can help to make the difference between a crowded layout & a more professional display. 'padding' is the space between the cell border & the content within it, whilst 'spacing' is the distance between adjacent cells. *Take care!* some (older) browsers will not support '%' here.

### **width:**

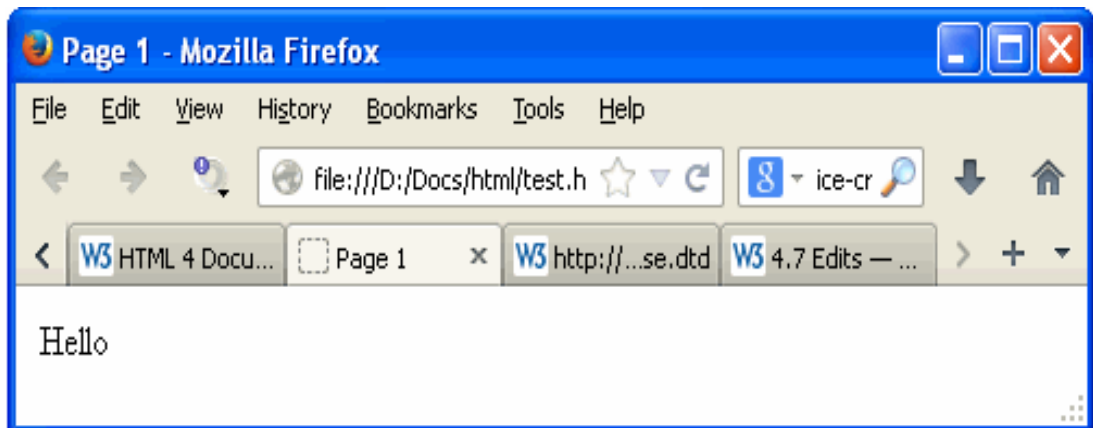
Using pixels for width can be very dangerous in most cases, as you cannot be sure of the width of the user's screen, so best to use '%' if at all.

# Reference Guide:- HTML

## The whole thing:

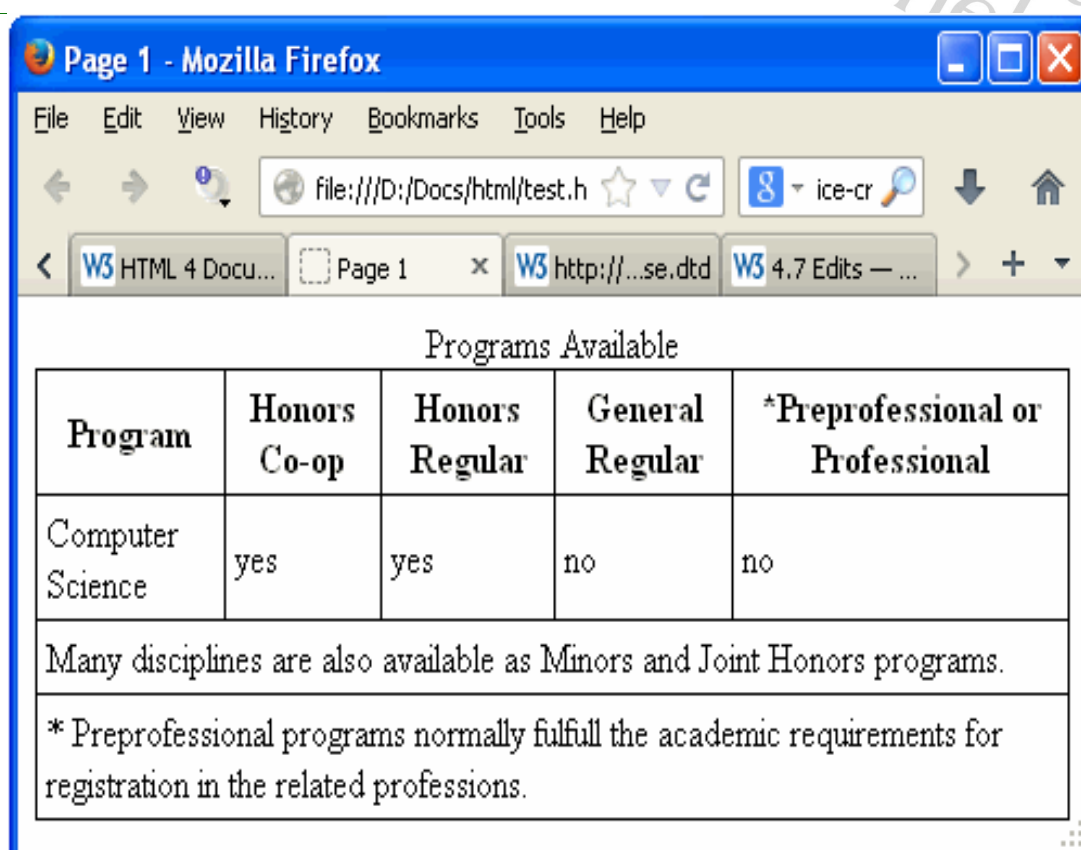
The simplest possible table is *really* simple (and probably not very useful):

```
<table>
  <tr>
    <td>Hello</td>
  </tr>
</table>
```



Here is a much more complex example using most elements, with default browser style (a "border rules="all" attributes have been added so that you can discern all the individual cells) (see below the html code):

```
<table border rules="all" cellpadding=4>
  <caption>Programs Available</caption>
  <colgroup class="program-discipline">
  <colgroup class="program-type" span=5>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th scope="col">Program</th>
      <th scope="col">Honors Co-op</th>
      <th scope="col">Honors Regular</th>
      <th scope="col">General Regular</th>
      <th scope="col">*Preprofessional or Professional</th>
    </tr>
  </thead>
  <tfoot class="footnote">
    <tr>
      <td colspan=5>
        Many disciplines are also available as Minors and Joint Honors
        programs.
      </td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td colspan=5>
        * Preprofessional programs normally fulfill the academic
        requirements for registration in the related professions.
      </td>
    </tr>
  </tfoot>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td scope="row">Computer Science</td>
      <td>yes</td>
      <td>yes</td>
      <td>no</td>
      <td>no</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>
```





# tbody - Table body

**Syntax:** `<tbody>...<tbody>`

**Description:** The optional `thead`, `tfoot` & `tbody` are intended by the HTML4 designers as *structural* elements within tables, grouping common elements together. The vision was that browsers would provide a scrolling region for the body of long tables & fixed sections at head & foot. Instead, much as with `col` & `colgroup`, the early HTML4 browsers decided simply to ignore them.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>table</code>
Can contain:	One or more <code>tr</code> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
<code>char</code>	(default: '.') char value if <code>align=char</code>
<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells

The HTML order must be `thead`, `tfoot` then `tbody` (all are optional) (the intention is to try to avoid rendering delays). See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

**Note:** the `scope` attribute of `th` and/or `tr` elements offers a simpler alternative to `tbody`, whilst missing the CSS/script opportunities.

## td - Table data cell

**Syntax:** `<td>...<td>`

**Description:** These are *header* (`th`) or *data* (`td`) cells (if the cell's content is both, then a `td` should be used) (however, the `td` aids in both table structure & presentation, even though the attributes for each are identical).

**See also:** [caption](#), [col](#), [colgroup](#), [tbody](#), [table](#), [td](#), [tfoot](#), [th](#), [thead](#), [tr](#)

**Properties:**

Content model: [Block](#)

Contained in: [tr](#)

Can contain: [Inline](#) elements, [block-level](#) elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

`lang:` - see [language-attributes](#)

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

`abbr` abbreviation for header cell

`align` (left|center|right|justify|char)  
horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)

`axis` comma-separated list of related headers

`bgcolor` (sRGB colours) background colour for cell (deprecated)

`char` (default: '.') char value if `align=char`

`charoff` (pixels or %) offset in cell to char if `align=char`

`colspan` (default: 1) number of cols spanned by cell

`headers` list of id's for header cells

`height` (pixels or %) height for cell (deprecated)

`nowrap` suppress word wrap (deprecated)

`rowspan` (default: 1) number of rows spanned by cell

`scope` (row|col|rowgroup|colgroup) scope covered by header cells

`valign` (top|middle|bottom|baseline) vertical alignment of cells

`width` (pixels or %) width for cell (deprecated)

**Note1:** a cell may be empty, although visual browsers may then give it a *naff* presentation (as if to tick you off), so always include at least a space.

## Reference Guide:- HTML

*Note2:* a cell may contain another `table`, (or any other `block-level` element) giving rise to (possibly) *very* complex tables.

**abbr:**

**axis:**

**headers:**

**scope:**

(all new at HTML4) `headers` + `scope` have a similar purpose, with `scope` being the simpler of the two; all 4 attributes are designed for cells that provide header information (with `axis` also having a broader application).

HTML4 has removed the earlier distinction between `th` & `td` to a *presentation* level (through stylesheets). Both are intended to be *data* cells, and their attributes are thus identical. For common structure/presentation in extremely large tables, HTML4 provides `col` & `colgroup`. For a simple method of structure/presentation in smaller tables it provides `scope` and for full control it gives `td.headers`.

`abbr`: a precis of the cell's contents (to be shown whilst the table loads, etc.).

`scope`: the data cells for which *this* cell provides header information; one of:

- `col`
- `colgroup`
- `row`
- `rowgroup`

`headers`: the header cell(s) which provide header information for *this* cell (inverse of `scope`). The value is a list of the header-cell `id`'s.

`axis`: the [W3c says](#): “*This attribute may be used to place a cell into conceptual categories that can be considered to form axes in an n-dimensional space*” (wtf?).

To the best of my knowledge, browser designers have mostly ignored everything written in this section, and have failed to implement any (or most) of what HTML4 hoped for in that regard. They appear to have decided that, at this point, the HTML4 designers had disappeared up their own axis.

**colspan:**

**rowspan:**

(default 1) It is possible to have a value of ‘0’ (zero), which is intended to mean “all cols|rows from here to the end” - beware of the value of `dir` in that. However, it was ignored by most HTML4 browsers.

*Some practical advice:* it is *very* easy, as you build bigger tables, to make mistakes with these 2 attributes. *Always* test out your layout before entering any data.

See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

# textarea - Multi-line text input

**Syntax:** `<textarea>...</textarea>`

**Description:** `textarea` defines a multi-line text-input control (see also `input type=text` for the single-line text-input control).

**See also:** `button`, `fieldset`, `form`, `input`, `label`, `legend`, `optgroup`, `option`, `select`, `textarea`

**Properties:**

Content model: [Inline](#)

Contained in: [Block-level](#) elements, [inline](#) elements except `button`

Can contain: Plain text (which includes entities)

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see [core-attributes](#)

`i18n:` - see [language-attributes](#)

`events:` - see [event attributes](#)

`accesskey` accessibility key character

`cols` # of columns

`disabled`

`name` field name

`onblur` (script) the element lost the focus

`onchange` (script) the element value was changed

`onfocus` (script) the element got the focus

`onselect` (script) some text was selected

`readonly` (new in HTML4)

`rows` # of rows

`tabindex` position in tabbing order

Any initial content—which must NOT contain any html tags—is treated by browsers as the default content on construction. On submission, the usual name/value pair is submitted; the `name` attribute is the *key* whilst current content is the value. Before HTML4 these *had* to be defined within a form.

**cols:**

**rows:**

One important feature to understand is that these two attributes govern only the *visual* appearance of the control, and not the amount of text that can be entered by the user, which *in theory* is unlimited, although some browsers will limit the amount to 32k or 64k. In addition, the [mysql DB](#) will typically store an absolute max of 64kB in a TEXT field, which then [can drop drastically if UTF8 to 21,844 characters](#).

Ultimately, the author of the server-side routines that process form submissions is responsible for all checks & restrictions on data received from form submissions and, with `textarea`, size needs to be one of those checks.

# tfoot - Table foot

**Syntax:** `<tfoot>...<tfoot>`

**Description:** The optional `thead`, `tfoot` & `tbody` are intended by the HTML4 designers as *structural* elements within tables, grouping common elements together. The vision was that browsers would provide a scrolling region for the body of long tables & fixed sections at head & foot. Instead, much as with `col` & `colgroup`, the early HTML4 browsers decided simply to ignore them.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>table</code>
Can contain:	One or more <code>tr</code> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
<code>char</code>	(default: '.') char value if <code>align=char</code>
<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells

The HTML order must be `thead`, `tfoot` then `tbody` (all are optional) (the intention is to try to avoid rendering delays). See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

**Note:** the `scope` attribute of `th` and/or `tr` elements offers a simpler alternative to `tfoot`, whilst missing the CSS/script opportunities.

## th - Table header cell

**Syntax:** `<th>...<th>`

**Description:** These are *header* (`th`) or *data* (`td`) cells (if the cell's content is both, then a `td` should be used) (however, the `th` aids in both table structure & presentation, even though the attributes for each are identical).

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model: **Block**

Contained in: `tr`

Can contain: **Inline** elements, **block-level** elements

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

`core:` - see **core-attributes**

`il8n:` - see **language-attributes**

`events:` - see **event attributes**

`abbr` abbreviation for header cell

`align` (left|center|right|justify|char)  
horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)

`axis` comma-separated list of related headers

`bgcolor` (sRGB colours) background colour for cell (deprecated)

`char` (default: '.') char value if `align=char`

`charoff` (pixels or %) offset in cell to char if `align=char`

`colspan` number of cols spanned by cell

`headers` list of id's for header cells

`height` (pixels or %) height for cell (deprecated)

`nowrap` suppress word wrap (deprecated)

`rowspan` number of rows spanned by cell

`scope` (row|col|rowgroup|colgroup) scope covered by header cells

`valign` (top|middle|bottom|baseline) vertical alignment of cells

`width` (pixels or %) width for cell (deprecated)

**Note1:** a cell may be empty, although visual browsers may then give it a *naff* presentation (as if to tick you off), so always include at least a space.

## Reference Guide:- HTML

*Note2:* a cell may contain another `table`, (or any other `block-level` element) giving rise to (possibly) *very* complex tables.

**abbr:**

**axis:**

**headers:**

**scope:**

`headers` + `scope` (all new at HTML4) have a similar purpose, with `scope` being the simpler of the two; all 4 attributes are designed for cells that provide header information (with `axis` also having a broader application).

HTML4 has removed the earlier distinction between `th` & `td` to a *presentation* level (through stylesheets). Both are intended to be *data* cells, and their attributes are thus identical. For common structure/presentation in extremely large tables, HTML4 provides `col` & `colgroup`. For a simple method of structure/presentation in smaller tables it provides `scope` and for full control it gives `th.headers`.

`abbr`: a precis of the cell's contents (to be shown whilst the table loads, etc.).

`scope`: the data cells for which *this* cell provides header information; one of:

- `col`
- `colgroup`
- `row`
- `rowgroup`

`headers`: the header cell(s) which provide header information for *this* cell (inverse of `scope`). The value is a list of the header-cell `id`'s.

`axis`: the [W3c says](#): “*This attribute may be used to place a cell into conceptual categories that can be considered to form axes in an n-dimensional space*” (wtf?).

To the best of my knowledge, browser designers have mostly ignored everything written in this section, and have failed to implement any (or most) of what HTML4 hoped for in that regard. They appear to have decided that, at this point, the HTML4 designers had disappeared up their own axis.

**colspan:**

**rowspan:**

(default 1) It is possible to have a value of ‘0’ (zero), which is intended to mean “all cols|rows from here to the end” - beware of the value of `dir` in that. However, it was ignored by most HTML4 browsers.

*Some practical advice:* it is *very* easy, as you build bigger tables, to make mistakes with these 2 attributes. *Always* test out your layout before entering any data.

See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.



# thead - Table head

**Syntax:** `<thead>...</thead>`

**Description:** The optional `thead`, `tfoot` & `tbody` are intended by the HTML4 designers as *structural* elements within tables, grouping common elements together. The vision was that browsers would provide a scrolling region for the body of long tables & fixed sections at head & foot. Instead, much as with `col` & `colgroup`, the early HTML4 browsers decided simply to ignore them.

**See also:** `caption`, `col`, `colgroup`, `tbody`, `table`, `td`, `tfoot`, `th`, `thead`, `tr`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
----------------	-------

Contained in:	<code>table</code>
---------------	--------------------

Can contain:	One or more <code>tr</code> elements
--------------	--------------------------------------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict
-----------	------------------

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
--------------------	---------------------------------------

<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
--------------------	---

<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
----------------------	--

<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
--------------------	--

<code>char</code>	(default: '.') char value if <code>align=char</code>
-------------------	--

<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
----------------------	---

<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells
---------------------	--

The HTML order must be `thead`, `tfoot` then `tbody` (all are optional) (the intention is to try to avoid rendering delays). See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of `table` assembled together.

**Note:** the `scope` attribute of `th` and/or `tr` elements offers a simpler alternative to `thead`, whilst missing the CSS/script opportunities.

# title - Document title

**Syntax:** `<title>...</title>`

**Description:** `title` is **Required**; there may only be one, composed of text and/or entities (no HTML tags allowed).

**See also:** `base`, `isindex`, `head`, `link`, `meta`, `object`, `script`, `style`, `title`

### Properties:

---

Content model: **Other**

---

Contained in: `html`

---

Can contain: Plain text, including entities

---

Standard: HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

### Attributes:

---

`lang`: - see [language-attributes](#)

---

Writing a good title is something of an art-form, long practised by Newspaper & Magazine sub-editors; the main advice given here will be: “less is more” (“*multum in parvo*”). Consider the following:

- tabbed browsers put it in the tab (with the full title as a *tooltip*)
- OSs will use it for the taskbar, dock, menu bar, etc.
- SEs will pay strong attention to it in placing the page in the SERPs, in part according to how it matches the content that follows

The Title has become yet another place that has become keyword-stuffed as HTML writers fall prey to the lure of SEO & chase the SERPs. That can easily become a fools’ errand. It is humans that read web-pages (bots only scrape them), so write for your human readers first. If they like what they read, they will recommend your words to other readers, and your pages will rise up the SERPs. It’s easy, really; the content& how it is presented truly should be King and Queen in all that you do.

### tr - Table row

**Syntax:** `<tr>...<tr>`

**Description:** `tr` is a table *row*, and groups together a common row of *header* (`th`) or *data* (`td`) cells. `tr` is thus a *structure & presentation* element rather than a data element but, unlike all other such table elements, is **Required**.

**See also:** [caption](#), [col](#), [colgroup](#), [tbody](#), [table](#), [td](#), [tfoot](#), [th](#), [thead](#), [tr](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Block</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">thead</a> , <a href="#">tfoot</a> , <a href="#">tbody</a>
Can contain:	One or more <a href="#">td</a> or <a href="#">th</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
<code>l18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

<code>align</code>	(left center right justify char) horizontal alignment of cells (deprecated)
<code>bgcolor</code>	(sRGB colours) background colour for row (deprecated)
<code>char</code>	(default: '.') char value if <code>align=char</code>
<code>charoff</code>	(pixels or %) offset in cell to char if <code>align=char</code>
<code>valign</code>	(top middle bottom baseline) vertical alignment of cells

`tr` must sit within a [thead](#), [tfoot](#) or [tbody](#). There can be zero instances of the first two and the start/end tags for [tbody](#) are optional, which means that the simpler structure of a html3.2 table is still fully valid HTML4.0.1.

See [table: the whole thing](#) for most of the elements of [table](#) assembled together.

# tt - Teletype text

**Syntax:** `<tt>...</tt>`

**Description:** Not everyone reading this will know what teletype-text originally looked like. It normally gets rendered in a browser as monospaced-text.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

### Attributes:

core:	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
i18n:	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
events:	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>

### ***u* - Underlined text**

**Syntax:** `<u>...</u>`

**Description:** `u` is normally rendered in a visual browser in an underlined style.

**See also:** [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [bdo](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [q](#), [samp](#), [small](#), [span](#), [strong](#), [sub](#), [sup](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

**Properties:**

Content model:	<a href="#">Inline</a>
----------------	------------------------

Contained in:	<a href="#">Block-level</a> + <a href="#">inline</a> elements
---------------	---

Can contain:	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
--------------	---------------------------------

Standard:	HTML 4.01 Loose (deprecated in HTML4), HTML 3.2 Final
-----------	---

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <a href="#">core-attributes</a>
--------------------	---------------------------------------

<code>i18n:</code>	- see <a href="#">language-attributes</a>
--------------------	---

<code>events:</code>	- see <a href="#">event attributes</a>
----------------------	--

### ul - Unordered list

**Syntax:** `<ul>...</ul>`

**Description:** `ul` is an *unordered* list of items and, through the black magic of stylesheets, is often used for menu items.

**See also:** `li`, `ol`, `ul`

**Properties:**

Content model:	Block
Contained in:	<code>applet</code> , <code>blockquote</code> , <code>body</code> , <code>button</code> , <code>center</code> , <code>dd</code> , <code>del</code> , <code>div</code> , <code>fieldset</code> , <code>form</code> , <code>iframe</code> , <code>ins</code> , <code>li</code> , <code>map</code> , <code>noframes</code> , <code>noscript</code> , <code>object</code> , <code>td</code> , <code>th</code>
Can contain:	One or more <code>li</code> elements
Standard:	HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

**Attributes:**

<code>core:</code>	- see <code>core-attributes</code>
<code>i18n:</code>	- see <code>language-attributes</code>
<code>events:</code>	- see <code>event attributes</code>
<code>compact</code>	display in a compact style (deprecated)
<code>type</code>	(disc square circle) style for bullet (deprecated)

**compact:**

`compact` is poorly supported by browsers.

**type:**

`type` governs the *style* of presentation of the bullet allotted to the contained `li` elements, and thus is **deprecated** in HTML4.01 Strict. The value is `disc`|`square`|`circle` and, in the absence of any stylesheet information, the browser will decide according to the *level* of the list (`li` elements can be nested, which will give rise to different levels of listing – see next page for an example in a browser).

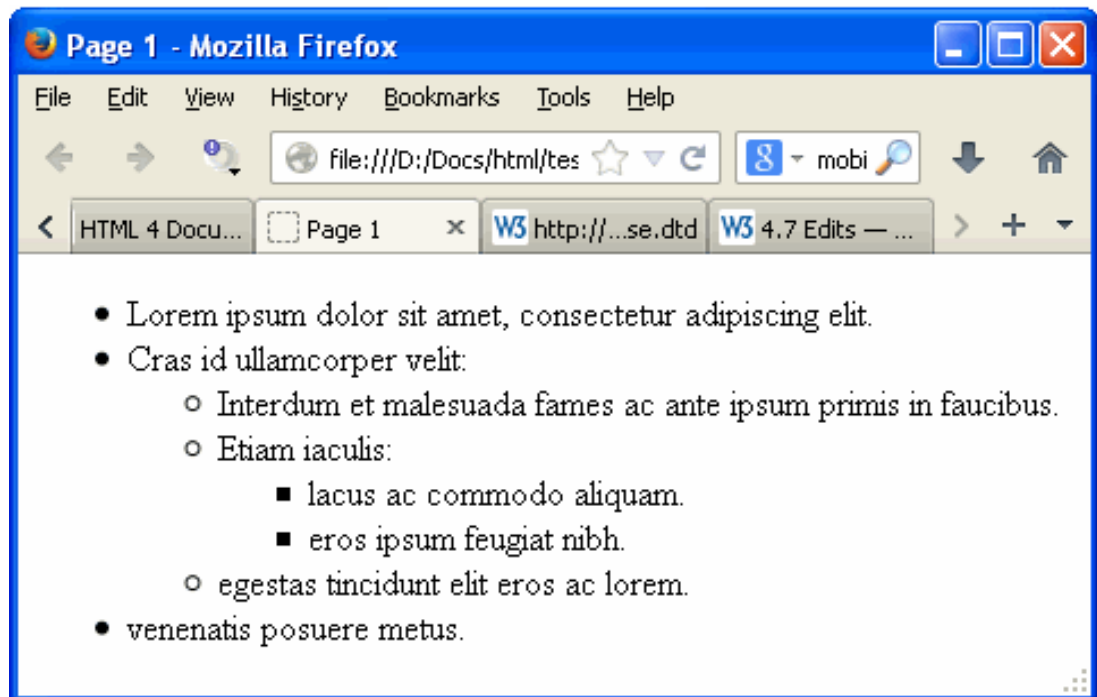
## Reference Guide:- HTML

### The whole thing:

Here is html for `ul`, with nested `li`; note that the *white space* in the html should have zero effect on the results in the browser, although some browsers in the past have had bugs in some versions causing differences in presentation according to the presence/absence of white space. For that kind of reason I would always advise to use the closing end-tag, even though—as here—it is often optional:

```
<ul>
  <li>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit.</li>
  <li>Cras id ullamcorper velit:<ul>
    <li>Interdum et malesuada fames ac ante ipsum primis in faucibus.</li>
    <li>Etiam iaculis:<ul>
      <li>lacus ac commodo aliquam.</li>
      <li>eros ipsum feugiat nibh.</li></ul></li>
    <li>egestas tincidunt elit eros ac lorem.</li></ul></li>
  <li>venenatis posuere metus.</li>
</ul>
```

...and what it looks like with a default stylesheet in Firefox23.0.1:



# var - Variable

**Syntax:**      `<var>...</var>`

**Description:** `var` is normally rendered in a visual browser in *italics*.

**See also:**    [abbr](#), [acronym](#), [b](#), [big](#), [cite](#), [code](#), [dfn](#), [em](#), [i](#), [kbd](#), [samp](#), [small](#),  
[strong](#), [tt](#), [var](#)

### Properties:

---

Content model: [Inline](#)

---

Contained in:    [Block-level](#) + [inline](#) elements

---

Can contain:    [Inline](#) elements

---

Standard:        HTML 4.01 Strict, HTML 3.2 Final, HTML 2.0

---

### Attributes:

---

`core:`            - see [core-attributes](#)

---

`i18n:`            - see [language-attributes](#)

---

`events:`          - see [event attributes](#)

---



---

## **Reference Guide:- CSS**

# Introduction

**HTML:** “HyperText Markup Language”

**CSS:** “Cascading Style Sheets”

HTML is a markup language for documents that may contain more than just plain text, and CSS is a simple method for the author to attach visual (or perhaps spoken) *style* to that document's display.

Introduced together with [script](#) as *placeholders* in [HTML3.2 Final](#), [style](#) first became an active element in [HTML4](#).

Visually, HTML is designed to be displayed on a *canvas*. That ‘canvas’ may be a mobile, a computer VDU (‘Visual Display Unit’), a piece of paper, a projector screen or the side of a house; CSS attempts to provide a formatting & layout model that will give a similar result in all circumstances, yet remain simple to understand & use. It mostly succeeds in that.

The building blocks of CSS—the various [CSS Properties](#)—are easy to understand & apply for those that are familiar with HTML. Complexity may arrive with the ways that those properties can interact with the HTML elements & each other on the canvas, and perhaps also with the terminology used. The latter—the terms used—will be familiar for anyone that has used DTP (‘Desk-Top Publishing’) software.

The next-but-one section in this brief intro is the [CSS Layout Model](#). It will set out how HTML elements are laid out on the canvas, and will also introduce all the DTP terms that will be used in these pages. It's simple stuff, but vital to know if you want to get to grips with CSS. But first...

“Cascading”:

The next section is how to [attach style & StyleSheets](#) to the HTML document, and in particular how ‘cascading’ works.

It is perfectly normal to have 3 or more sets of *style* acting on a document at once; here is an example:

1. The author's site-wide *StyleSheet*
2. Document-specific inline *style* (an embedded *StyleSheet*)
3. HTML element inline *style*

The first helps to give the same look ‘n’ feel across an entire site.

The second can give a specific look to a specific page.

The third will (say) give a specific style to a specific sentence.

Further, the first *StyleSheet* may import other *StyleSheets* (and so on), and it is also possible for the reader to setup a personal stylesheet (perhaps they want to increase the font-size on all docs that they read); in the end, it can get *really* complicated as to which style-statement for a HTML element should apply. The methods & resolution of all this is known collectively as the “*Cascading Mechanism*”.

### Overview:

There are lots of ways to tell the browser what style you want. Things are done like that to both provide flexibility & also to expand the author's options. It can mean, however, that the browser needs to decide which, from several competing style statements, it will apply to a specific HTML element.

This section will first itemise all the many ways to attach style to a doc, list common methods of specifying style (the stylesheet '*syntax*') and then, at the end, will explain the *cascading order* by which the browser chooses one style statement over other, competing statements.

```
<html>
<head>
  <title>title</title>
  <meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css">
  <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css"
    href="http://style.com/cool" title="cool">
  <link rel="alternate stylesheet" type="text/css"
    href="http://style.com/uncool" title="uncool">
  <style type="text/css"><!--
    @import url(http://style.com/basic);
    h1 { color: blue; }
  --></style>
</head>
<body>
  <h1>headline is blue</h1>
  <p style="color: green;">while the paragraph is green.
</body>
</html>
```

The [W3C examples](#) above shows 4 methods of how to combine style & HTML. Strictly, this is a HTML topic, and is also discussed in the relevant sections of the HTML Reference.

1. [Loading an external StyleSheet](#)
2. [Using an Embedded StyleSheet](#)
3. [Importing a StyleSheet \(@import\)](#)
4. [Inline Style – class, id or style](#)
5. [Stylesheet Syntax – Intro](#)
6. [Stylesheet Syntax](#)
  - a. [Comments](#)
  - b. [Whitespace](#)
  - c. [Statements](#)
  - d. [Grouping selectors](#)
  - e. [Class & ID selectors](#)
  - f. [Inheritance](#)
  - g. [Contextual Selectors](#)
7. [Cascading Order](#)
  - a. [!important](#)

example:

```
<link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css"
      href="http://style.com/cool" title="cool">
<link rel="alternate stylesheet" type="text/css"
      href="http://style.com/uncool" title="uncool">
```

**Definition:-** a “*StyleSheet*” is a plain-text document full of style statements.

(examples of such ‘style statements’ are at the bottom of each [CSS Property](#) page in this PDF; web-page stylesheets can also be viewed as plain-text in a browser, or by using various browser extensions) (try [Web Developer](#))

*rel=stylesheet:*

The HTML [link](#) element with ‘rel=stylesheet’ (must be within the [head](#)) will cause every style statement in the ‘cool’ stylesheet to be applied to the document. Multiple such elements can be used, with differing `href` values, and the `title` attribute is important:-

- *no title:-* is the *persistent* *StyleSheet* (always applied) (one only)
- *some title:-* is the *preferred* *StyleSheet* (auto-applied) (one only)
- *same title:-* all are concatenated together into one stylesheet

*rel="alternate stylesheet":*

The HTML [link](#) element with ‘rel="alternate stylesheet"' (must be within the [head](#)) will cause every style statement in the ‘uncool’ stylesheet to be available as an *alternative* stylesheet for the document. The `title` attribute is *required* with this value. Multiple such elements can be used, with differing `href` values, to offer multiple options.

(many recent browsers, when there are optional stylesheets, will offer a method—the menu—to switch between the styles)

This author strongly recommends that you make use of this method. Develop a basic ‘look ‘n’ feel for your site in a single *StyleSheet*—most small & medium-sized sites will need just one—then get on with adding content to your site.

*See also:* (HTML) [link rel=stylesheet](#)

example:

```
<style type="text/css"><!--  
    h1 { color: blue; }  
--></style>
```

**Definition:-** an “*Embedded StyleSheet*” are style statements placed between `style` elements.

(must be within the `head`) These are *inline style* statements that apply to the whole document. Essentially, this is a stylesheet embedded within the document; that ‘stylesheet’ can be as few as one style statement, or many. The same rules as for external stylesheets apply.

*HTML comments:*

The example at top is shown embedded within SGML *comments* (“<!-- ... -->”). These were essential to use shortly after introduction, as pre-HTML4 browsers would ignore the unknown ‘style’ tag, yet display the style statements as text in the document. Embedding those statements within comment-tags prevented those browsers from doing that, but still allowed conforming browsers to recognise the `style` statements. Few folks use such ancient browsers these days, but the practice does no harm.

**External** stylesheets do not need to use SGML *comments*.

example:

```
<style type="text/css"><!--  
    @import url(http://style.com/basic);  
--></style>
```

**Definition:-** an “*Imported StyleSheet*” is an external stylesheet added using the ‘@import’ statement.

It must be:

1. Within a stylesheet (whether [external](#) or [embedded](#)).
2. The first statement in the stylesheet.

More than one @import statement can be used.

Style statements within the stylesheet containing the @import statement over-ride any conflicting imported statements for the same element (the last one wins). See the Cascading Mechanism for the full set of Cascade rules.

*HTML comments:*

See the page on [embedded stylesheets | html comments](#) for the reason for their inclusion here.

*What's the point?*

‘Modularity’ is the main reason for this mechanism. The idea is to try to reduce the amount of typing, and to allow style-rules to be built in *modules* that can be re-used.

examples:

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css">
...
<p class="engineer">
<p id="grass">
<p style="color: green;">
```

**Definition:-** “*Inline Style*” is style applied to a HTML element via the ‘class’, ‘id’ or ‘style’ **core attributes**.

HTML4 introduced the ‘class’, ‘id’ & ‘style’ attributes as **core attributes** for *almost* every HTML element (only **basefont**, **param** & **script** do NOT accept them). The style associated with that attribute is then applied directly to it, and also over-rides any other, competing style statements from other sources.

These 3 attributes effectively allow a stylesheet to be embedded *inline* within the element itself (remember:- a ‘stylesheet’ can be one, single style statement, or many). If there are multiple style statements, then each one needs to be separated from the others by a semi-colon (;) (see ‘style’ example, top). Strictly, the last statement in a stylesheet does NOT need a terminating ‘;’, but this author—from long, bitter experience—advises you to *always* include a terminating ‘;’ for *every* statement, whether it needs it or not (it does no harm).

What are the differences?

- **style:**  
The attribute value (in the example above, ‘color: green;’) is the style to be applied to that element. If you find yourself wanting to use 3 or more statements, then you should probably use ‘class’, or possibly ‘id’.

Style statements within the `style` attribute will *always* apply, regardless of other competing style (on the basis of ‘last one wins’) (see also `id`).

- **id:**  
This attribute shares a *namespace* with the ‘name’ attribute, and is thus guaranteed to have a unique value within the document (in the example above, there will be one, and one only, ‘grass’ `id` or `name` (and not both) throughout the document).

The `id` attribute is given the highest style *specificity*. It shares this specificity with the `style` attribute.

- **class:**  
This attribute is explicitly for style; learning to use it is more of an art than a science.

The `class` attribute is given the next-highest style *specificity* (below `id`). Like `id`, it can be applied to *any* html element (repetitively, unlike `id`).

## Reference Guide:- CSS

### What are the similarities?

- `id`, `class`:

Each of these attributes needs to be both declared & defined (given both a name as an attribute + a value) within a *stylesheet* before use. That stylesheet may be [external](#), [embedded](#) or [imported](#). Once declared + defined, the attribute can be used as normal within a `HTML tag`, and the style within the attribute value is then applied to that `HTML element`.

### Some artificial examples:

There is every chance that you, the reader, may not yet understand all the differences nor similarities between these 3 attributes. If so, that will most likely be because you have not yet tried out a stylesheet on a document & played with it. This is one of those occasions where most of the learning will come from doing rather than reading (in addition, the [stylesheet rules](#) are in a later section). Nevertheless, to try to help:

1. Use a stylesheet to set the style for all the `HTML elements` that you will use in your document(s).
2. Use *class(es)* within a stylesheet for situation(s) where the style of particular sections will differ from the default. One art to try to pickup is to give the class a name that reflects the *style* that you want rather than a literal name (eg 'engineer' rather than 'dark-green', or 'agreement\_conditions' rather than 'really\_small') (think: you may at some later time decide to change the font-size).
3. *id* is useful for sections-within-a-section where it differs again on rare occasions. 'agreement\_conditions' is perhaps a better example as a name for *id* than it is for *class*.
4. *style* is then useful for the one-off where you need to tweak the style.

```
default:  p          { background: #004400; color: #ccffcc; }
class:    p.engineer { background: #ccffcc; color: #white; }
id:       p#grass   { background: green;   color: black; }
```

```
the html: <p>
Some words to show you the default, shifting to <span
class="engineer">the Engineer Class to illustrate that</span>, and
finishing with the defaults.
</p>
<p class="engineer">
But, of course, then you want to give the Class it's full reign and
let it strut it's stuff in a full paragraph.
</p>
<p class="engineer" id="grass">
Now you mix it up a bit,          and discover that the id will always
win in an arm-wrestling match with the          Class.
</p>
<p style="background: white; color: black;" id="grass">
But what happens now? (remember that this style was defined <span
style="font-style: italic;">after</span> id.)
</p>
```

### The result:

Some words to show you the default, shifting to the Engineer Class to illustrate that, and finishing with the defaults.

But, of course, then you want to give the Class it's full reign and let it strut it's stuff in a full paragraph.

Now you mix it up a bit, and discover that the id will always win in an arm-wrestling match with the Class.

But what happens now? (remember that this style was defined *after* id.)



example:

```
p color: green;
```

*Definition 1:- “Syntax”* is the set of words & punctuation that a browser can recognise as valid CSS – the rules of the game.

*Definition 2:- “Computer”* is a very fast idiot.

*Do NOT:* quote neither properties nor keywords.

(in the example above, ‘color’ is a *property* & ‘green’ is a *keyword*, representing the value for ‘color’, and in this sentence I’ve quoted both of them, which is exactly what you should NOT do in your stylesheets!)

*Hint:* write & save your stylesheets—just like your HTML documents—in UTF-8, (there is more on this below) with no BOM (“Byte-Order Mark”). If you decide to use a different charset (DON’T!), make sure that the same charset is used for both documents & stylesheets.

Stylesheets will accept a *very* limited set of characters. UTF-8 contains approx 32,000 characters; stylesheets will allow you to use less than 127 of those (and only from the US-ASCII charset) (technically, *CDATA* with extra limits):

- A ⇒ Z
- a ⇒ z
- 0 ⇒ 9
- hyphens (‘-’)
- underscores (‘\_’)
- periods (‘.’)
- colons (‘:’)
- semi-colons (‘;’)
- curly brackets (‘{’ + ‘}’)
- hash marks (‘#’)
- exclamation marks (‘!’)
- slash-dot, dot-slash C-Style comments (‘/\* ... \*/’)
- single-quotes (‘’)
- double-quotes (‘‘’)
- whitespace is ignored  
(tabs: 0x09; newlines: 0x0a; form-feeds: 0x0c; carriage-return: 0x0d; space: 0x20)

*errata:* The above is untrue. I’m deliberately lying to you; but for a good reason!

The above is true for [HTML4.01](#) (plus `id` & `class` must begin with a letter, no spaces allowed). HTML5 has [completely changed the rules of the game](#), which is a little dangerous: now, `id` & `class` must *contain* at least one letter, and spaces are still not allowed. Apart from that, you can use whatever characters that you like (including all punctuation if you want!).

## Reference Guide:- CSS

---

*My advice?:* start with HTML4 until you are comfortable with it. HTML5 is not finalised & keeps changing as I type this. If you take the advice given so far, then you can begin to add HTML5 elements as you like with zero changes (all of *HTML 4.01 Strict* is also part of *HTML5*). In any case, the tighter rules for HTML4 will help you as you learn to give meaningful names for `class` and `id`.

Learn to use the HTML elements with the purpose for which they were designed. Some elements are *block*, whilst others are *inline*, and there is a reason for that. CSS allows you to make any element either block or inline at will. That is ever so useful if you have a specific instance where you need to change it's character, but you should also ask whether perhaps you are using the wrong element.

Finally:- have fun! If it is hard work, but you are enjoying yourself, that is about right.

*charset:* This pdf suggests that you use UTF-8 as the encoding for your HTML documents and also for the CSS files. The [Primer lessons](#) also explain the steps that you need to take to make sure that your browser can recognise those documents correctly. That will allow you to use *any* language within your document & CSS, if your text-editor is also configured correctly to use UTF-8. Some of all that can be fiddly to get right, but none of it is difficult.

The next section will itemise all of the StyleSheet syntax, then give the *cascading order*.

# Reference Guide:- CSS

## Stylesheet Syntax

A *stylesheet* is a plain-text file full of *statements* that link *style* to HTML *elements*. This section will set out the *syntax* & *grammar* of stylesheets, with examples. Here are two useful links to help you validate your HTML docs & your CSS, and another for the formal specification:

- [W3C CSS Validator](#)
- [W3C HTML Validator](#)
- [CSS1 Grammar](#)

### Comments:

```
/* ...  
 * ...  
 */
```

In addition to style *statements* you can also have style *comments* within your stylesheets. These are C-style comments, and can be single- or multi-line. They begin with a *slash-dot* ('/\*') and finish at a *dot-slash* ('\*/'). They can NOT be nested. When the browser *parses* (browser-speak for 'reads') a stylesheet & finds a matching *slash-dot* & *dot-slash*, it will remove them plus everything between them & replace it all with a single space.

Comments are useful for others that want to understand your stylesheet. They are also mighty useful for *you* if you later decide to edit the stylesheet.

*Hint:* learn to write useful comments.

### Whitespace:

Whitespace is ignored, so you can place as many spaces, tabs and/or blank-lines in the stylesheet as you like.

### Statements:

```
<selector> { <declaration> }  
p { color: blue; }
```

This is a simple example of a style statement (and, all by itself, is sufficient to be a stylesheet); 'p' is the example of a "selector", whilst 'color: blue' is the example of a "declaration", which in this example would be the style that would be attached to all [paragraph](#) elements within that web-page. So:-

- selector == HTML [element](#)

The declaration above is itself a combination of style *property* ('color') and *value* ('blue') and, in this case, only sets a single property. Many properties may be set at the same time ("grouped"); each property/value pair should be separated by a semi-colon (;). Here is an example:

```
p {  
    color:      blue;  
    background: white;  
}
```

### Grouping selectors:

```
h1, h2, h3 { color: blue; }
```

Grouping the selectors saves typing. It is also possible to group both selectors & declarations at the same time:

```
h1, h2, h3 {  
    color:      blue;  
    background: white;  
}
```

### Class & ID selectors:

```
code.html { color: blue; }  
code#css  { color: red;  }
```

A class is set with a dot (‘.’), whilst an id is set with a hash (‘#’). Above they are associated closely with the `code` element (the declarations could also be grouped), but they can also be declared independently of the element (and then also with grouped declarations if you wish):

```
.html { color: blue; }  
#css  { color: red;  }
```

This ‘bare’ declaration is perhaps more useful for Classes than for IDs: a class can be used in the html doc as often as you wish; the id can be used just once.

*Hint:* learn to give class/id names that are *meaningful*, and also that describe their *function* rather than their *appearance*. That will help you both remember what the name is as you use them, and also what it is supposed to do. Imagine if you call it a “*greeney*” class, then later decide that it looks better as ‘brown’, when what you wanted was a “*grounded*” class of style.

### Inheritance:

We are now getting close to setting out the ‘*cascading order*’ of stylesheets but first, consider inheritance:

Each one of the [css Properties](#) sets out whether it is inherited, or not. The browser constructs an object tree from your HTML (called a ‘DOM’: “Document Object Model”) which starts with the `html` object itself as the top-level member; next is ‘`body`’, then so on, depending on how each is declared in your document. The language used is of ‘parent’ & ‘child’, so the ‘body’ object is a child of the top-level HTML object (and so on throughout the branches of the tree).

Most of the CSS Properties are inherited from parent to child (but some are not). An obvious example is `font`, which will be inherited—if set on `body`—as the default for all text throughout the object tree, and thus for all text in your webpage. Imagine then if you have a paragraph element & change the font in it. That paragraph will initially inherit a value for font from it’s parent, but your style declaration will change that. However, any children declared in the paragraph—perhaps an `em` (‘emphasised’ text) element—will inherit the *new*

## Reference Guide:- CSS

value for font & not the old.

### Contextual Selectors:

```
p em { background: yellow; }
```

The final syntax to consider with CSS1 are a type of selector that are *higher* in the *cascading order* than simple selectors. In the example above, setting `em` ('emphasis') on a word in a `p` ('paragraph') would **change the background to yellow** (whilst the default was white), yet would have zero impact on emphasised words within any other element. You can make the list of nested selectors as large as you like (*remember*: the order is important).

### Cascading order:

It is the browser's job to decide which, out of (possibly) a multitude of different style statements, from (possibly) multiple stylesheets, will be chosen as the one(s) to apply to a specific HTML element at any point within that document. The browser is therefore given a set of rules to go through to decide which ones to choose. First, however, there is one, last, little wrinkle in the syntax which CSS offers to the writer to shift their favourite statement one notch higher up the preference order:

### !important:

```
p { color: blue ! important; }
```

In general, the rule is "*last one wins*". As an example, it was mentioned in [earlier sections](#) that one or many '@import' statements can be placed at the very top of the stylesheet, to import other stylesheets into the current stylesheet. Imagine that both the current and the imported stylesheet *both* contain `color` statements for `p`. Which one will apply? The answer is the *current* stylesheet, and the reason is that the current stylesheet statements are made *later* than the imported stylesheet, and—if everything else is equal—the "*last one wins*".

Now, consider the reader's stylesheets (because the person using the browser can have their own, personal stylesheets). The general import order is:

1. Browser defaults
2. Reader's stylesheets
3. Author stylesheets

...so if the reader wants all paragraph text in a blue font, but the author wants red text, the author's choice will prevail as it was the last. However, if the reader uses the syntax of "*!important*" as at top, then the reader's choice will prevail... unless the author is naughty, and also uses "*!important*" for their red text, because then the weights will be identical and, in that situation, as always, "*last one wins*".

So, the *cascading order* is next. In this, remember: the criteria is "weight". Which style statement carries the greatest weight? Which is the 500lb gorilla in the room? This is how it is decided:

Style properties are applied to HTML elements and, by design, there may be a large number of—and possibly conflicting—such properties for each element. The browser runs through a set of rules to discover which style statement has the greatest weight for a particular element at the place that it occurs within that html document. This is the algorithm used:

*Note:* the ‘sorting’ below continues only whilst the browser has more than one rule with equal weight. As soon as it finds itself with just one rule at the top of the order, that one is chosen, and the sorting stops.

1. Find a stylesheet selector that matches the html element  
(go to next if one or more matches)
  - a) If none apply, use the inherited value, or
  - b) If no inherited value (eg html itself, or non-inherited properties) use the initial value (and we are done)
2. Sort by weight (‘!important’ raises the weight)
  - a) author rules are chosen if equal weight
3. Sort by origin (most to least):
  - a) Author’s stylesheets
  - b) Reader’s stylesheets
  - c) Browser defaults
4. Sort by specificity of selector (most to least):
  - a) ID attributes in the selector
  - b) Class attributes in the selector
  - c) Contextual Selectors (how many tags)

This one is complicated, so here is an example:

```
li          {...} /* a=0 b=0 c=1 -> specificity = 1 */
ul li       {...} /* a=0 b=0 c=2 -> specificity = 2 */
ul ol li    {...} /* a=0 b=0 c=3 -> specificity = 3 */
li.red      {...} /* a=0 b=1 c=1 -> specificity = 11 */
ul ol li.red {...} /* a=0 b=1 c=3 -> specificity = 13 */
#x34y       {...} /* a=1 b=0 c=0 -> specificity = 100 */
```

Pseudo-elements count as normal elements

Pseudo-classes count as normal classes

5. Sort by order specified.
  - a) the last one specified is the one chosen.

Phew!

Next is the final section in this introduction: the css Layout Model.

This is one of those vital css subjects. Here are the sections:

1. Overview
2. Block-Level Elements
  - a. Collapsing Vertical Margins
  - b. Horizontal formatting
  - c. How the Browser Handles 'width: auto'
  - d. The Rules, or: "Who Messed with my css?"!
  - e. List-Item Elements
  - f. Floating (Block-Level) Elements
3. Inline Elements
  - a. The Baseline
  - b. How the line-box is formatted
  - c. Leading
  - d. Pt, Points
  - e. em
  - f. Kerning
  - g. Justification
  - h. Inline-Element Formatting
    - i. Whitespace
    - ii. br
    - iii. Replaced Elements
    - iv. Effects of Padding, Border and/or Margin
    - v. Effects of vertical-align



### A Brief Note Before:

The organisational structure & governance of the Internet, including those bodies that control the protocols that allow the whole thing to work & those that police what everybody does with it is completely fascinating, because... well... because there aren't any & nobody does.

The [W3C](#) (“World Wide Web Consortium”) is a good case in point. It was established by Sir Tim Berners-Lee in October 1994; he was the Brit that, in 1989, put together the (already existing) ideas of *Hypertext*, *TCP/IP*, *DNS* and (what was later called) the Internet. Crucially, he designed the HTTP protocol, wrote the first web-server and browser software, then gave this trillion-dollar package away to the world for nothing (“*this is for everyone*”). He was instrumental in creating the world's first website (at CERN, based in both Switzerland & France). This is what the W3C say about themselves:

“*The World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) is an international community that develops open standards to ensure the long-term growth of the Web.*

The W3C acts as the central clearing-house for all efforts to develop HTML & CSS. Yet, they cannot *force* anyone to accept their proposals; in particular, the browser providers have to translate such proposals into actual working products, and their history is of, initially at least, eagerly accepting parts of some of the proposals & blithely ignoring others.

There is another, somewhat controversial aspect. In my view the W3C has made some very dumb decisions; I will pick out two in particular:

1. The [CSS Box Model](#) places the HTML element at the heart of the model, and it is not possible to directly specify the width nor height of the enclosing box. I have zero problems with the first part, but the second struck me as nuts when I first met it. Microsoft tried, using the dominance of MSIE at that time, to enforce a non-conforming fix with [Internet Explorer 5 on the PC](#), but no-one else would accept that, and now we are all stuck with the original W3C proposal.
2. [CSS Line-Box formatting](#) is most ignorant, and makes it almost impossible to mix differing fonts on the page and obtain a professional result (in brief, CSS has abandoned the font *baseline* as the common feature for all font-display).

All the above, together with the [browser wars](#) & other features, has probably made the web-designer's work much more difficult than it needed to be. But then, nobody has ever tried to do this before, and on a world-wide basis. It is brand new, and the road for brand-new efforts is often rocky.

Well, it all makes for an interesting life and, as the ancient Chinese insult goes, “*may you live in interesting times*”.

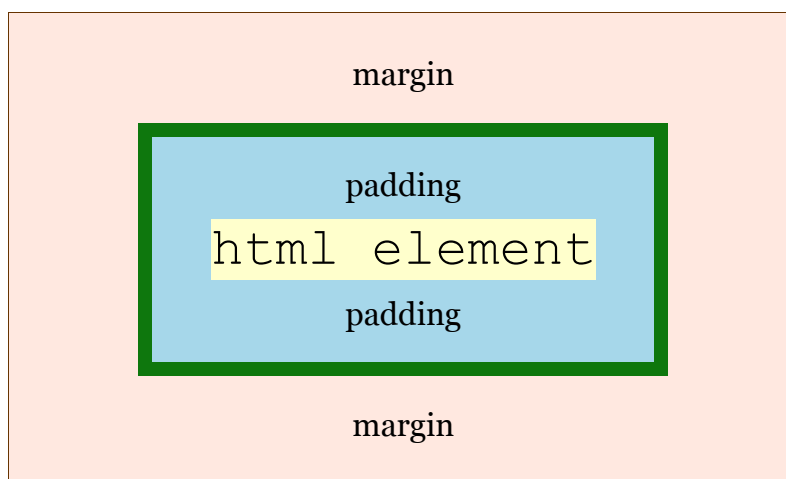


## Reference Guide:- CSS

**Overview:** An HTML element is *much* bigger than you think.

**Warning!:** This starts nice & simple, and steadily gets more complicated.

The job of the browser is to layout your precious html document on to a canvas, so that others can read (or *listen*) to it, and that whole process is called “*formatting*” (also: “*rendering*”) the document. The formatting *model* that [the W3C has chosen](#) is a box, with the content at it’s heart; specifically, the HTML element is the content, and that content sits within a box:



So:

1. **html element:**  
Strictly, ‘height’ & ‘width’ are almost *never* applied to an element (shown as yellow above) (see ‘box’ below); it fills the space left by the...
2. **padding:**  
This is **padding inside the box**, and surrounds the element. Padding has no colour. Put another way, it’s colour is that of the HTML element(s) that lay underneath it, which will be their `background color` (shown as blue above).
3. **box:**  
(shown as green above) It has a ‘border’ (thickness), ‘width’, ‘height’ & **many other properties**.

**!! watch out !!:** the ‘width’ & ‘height’ properties for the box are actually the width & height of the *content* of the box, and not of the box itself. If you want to know the height of the box, then you will need to add together the height of the contained element(s) + both sets of vertical padding + both sets of vertical border (and similar for the width).

4. **margin:**  
The is the **margin outside the box**, and gives a visual separation from adjacent boxes. Margin has no colour. Put another way, it’s colour will be that of it’s *parent* HTML element, which will be it’s parent’s `background color` (shown as pink above).

next: In HTML there are 3 types of element:

1. **Block-Level**

*Remember:* a block-level HTML element has an *intrinsic display* value of 'block' or 'list-item' (as applicable)

In CSS, the following are block-level:

- 'display: block'
- 'display: list-item'
- any value for *float* other than 'none'

*Key feature:* a block-level element opens on a new line

2. **Inline**

*Remember:* an inline HTML element has an *intrinsic display* value of 'inline' (mostly, this is text)

In CSS, the following are inline:

- 'display: inline'
- 'float: none'

*Key feature:* an inline element opens at the next display position within the display flow

3. **Other**

*Remember:* 'other' HTML elements have an *intrinsic display* value of 'none' (most of these must appear within the *head*)

In CSS, the following are 'other':

- 'display: none'

*Key feature:* an 'other' element is not displayed on the canvas within the ordinary flow of HTML elements; at all; ever

### Block-Level Elements:

There is a problem with a display based on boxes. You see, it can make the final page look a bit... well, *boxy*. I'll try to demonstrate that using text (which is *inline* rather than *block-level*, but no matter). Look at these 2 lines of text:

***This is some text using a fixed-width font (Courier)***

***This is some text using a proportional ('typeset') font (Georgia)***

Most folks will decide that the 'typeset' font is both more attractive and also, curiously, easier to read, even though there are far more letters on the line.

In both fonts, every letter occupies a little box. With the mono-spaced Courier font, every box is the same size, and no letter will ever touch nor overlap any other. With the proportional font Georgia, the vertical *height* of each box is identical to those in Courier, but the horizontal *width* is varied according to the content (hence the name 'proportional'). But there is more!

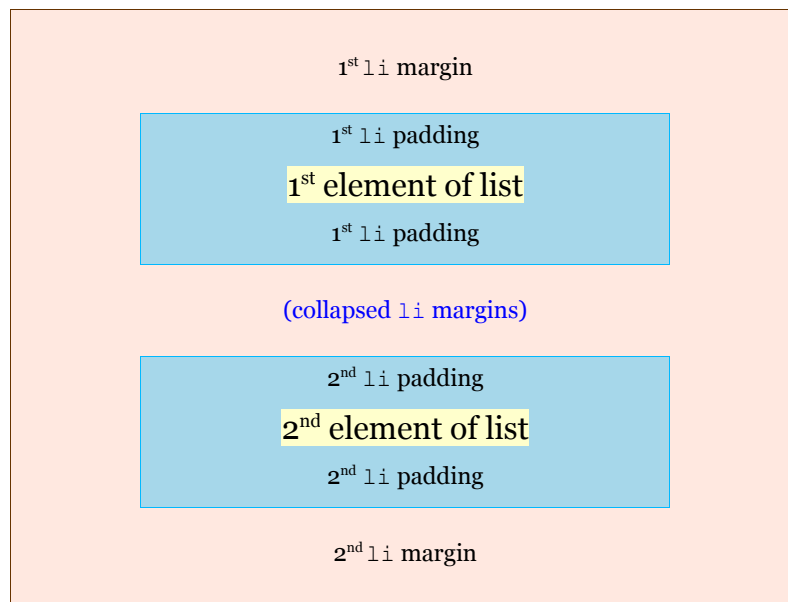
## Reference Guide:- CSS

The human eye & brain together are fantastically good at picking out patterns, plus we have an innate quality-control mechanism that says *“I like that pattern better than those other patterns”*. The interesting feature in this is that we pay more attention to those patterns that we like than those that we do not. So, early computers started with fixed-width fonts like Courier, but as soon as computers like the Macintosh brought out typeset displays...  
...everybody went *“I like those better”*!

*The bottom line is:* you do not want your web pages to look too boxy. Browsers try to cope with this by *“collapsing vertical margins”*; unfortunately, the treatment of horizontal margins is even more complicated.

### Collapsing Vertical Margins:

```
<ul>
  <li>1st element of list
  <li>2nd element of list
</ul>
```



This is *far* easier to show than to explain...

The above is an attempt to demonstrate how a browser would lay out the boxes for the html shown above them (both the `ul` & the `li` elements have been given padding + margin in the css; the `ul` has a pink background whilst the `li` has a blue background; the `ul` padding is not marked, but surrounds the `li` margins outside the pink box that you can see).

You can see the *“collapsed vertical margins”* in the middle. If not collapsed, the gap between the two list elements would be twice what it currently is; that would look wrong. So, the browser looks at list1 bottom-margin, and at list2 top-margin, and chooses whichever is biggest for the gap; that looks much better.

*PS:* `ul` == ‘unordered list’ & `li` == ‘list item’ (lines of words with bullet points)

## Reference Guide:- CSS

Here are [the precise words](#) that define ‘collapsing vertical margins’:

*“The width of the margin on non-floating block-level elements specifies the minimum distance to the edges of surrounding boxes. Two or more adjoining vertical margins (i.e., with no border, padding or content between them) are collapsed to use the maximum of the margin values”*

css life becomes even more interesting when one of the elements has a *negative* margin (it gets deducted from the positive one). If both are negative, then *“the absolute maximum of the negative adjoining margins is deducted from zero”*.

### Horizontal formatting:

Horizontal margins are *not* collapsed.

*remember 1:* the [width of a box](#) is actually the width of the *contents*

*remember 2:* the default value for [width](#) is ‘auto’

*remember 3:* the sum of the 7 below == the width of the *parent* element

You need 7 css properties to discover the full, formatted width of a non-floating, block-level HTML element:

1. margin (left & right)  
(can be set to ‘auto’)
2. border (left & right)
3. padding (left & right)
4. width  
(can be set to ‘auto’)  
(the browser is also allowed to change it to ‘auto’ if it wants)

*remember 4:* a ‘replaced element’ is an HTML element such as [img](#), where the size of the element is not known until the browser acquires it & only then discovers what it’s intrinsic size is.

### How the Browser Handles ‘width: auto’:

- *replaced element:*  
The width is replaced by the element’s intrinsic width
- *all other elements:*  
Width calculated using the 7-Property sum as above

*remember 5:* ‘width’ has a non-negative, browser-defined, minimum value. This value can vary from element-to-element, and can even depend upon the value of other properties.

If ‘width’ goes below the minimum limit, because either:

- the author set too low a figure, or
- the author set it to ‘auto’ + the rules (below) would make it go below the minimum, then...

...the value for ‘width’ is replaced by the browser with it’s minimum value.

## Reference Guide:- CSS

The Rules, or, “Who Messed with my css?”!

- If none of the 7 properties are ‘auto’, then ‘`margin-right: auto`’ is assigned
- If just one of ‘margin’ (left or right) or ‘width’ is ‘auto’, then that property is changed to a value which allows the browser to satisfy the 7-Property calculation.
- If ‘width’ is ‘auto’ and either/both of ‘margin’ (left or right) are also ‘auto’, then both margins are set to zero, and width is changed to satisfy the 7-Property calculation.
- Otherwise, if both margins are ‘auto’, they are set to equal values (which centres the element inside it’s parent).

(Inline/Floating Elements)

Any of the 7 properties set to ‘auto’ with such an element is treated as if the value were actually zero.

Phew! Well, I did warn you.

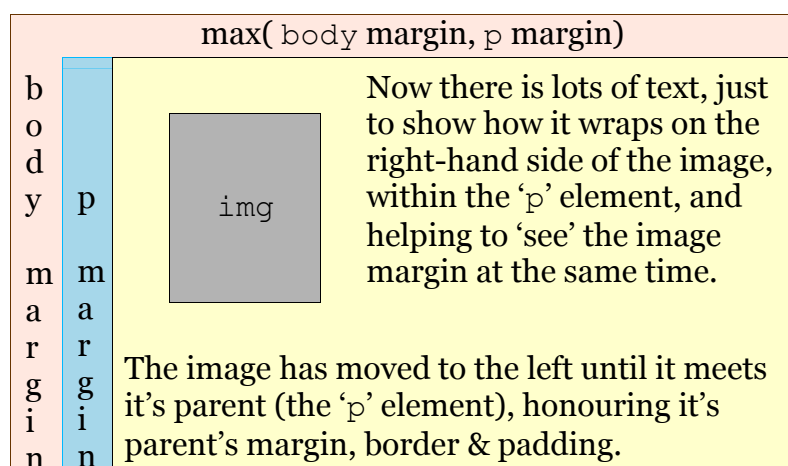
### List-Item Elements

These are also formatted as block-level elements, with the added extra that they are preceded by a list-item marker. Perhaps the main item to note with these elements is that the directionality of the text decides as to whether the marker is placed on the left (*ltr* languages) or the right (*rtl* languages) (see [bdo](#) for extra on this).

### Floating (Block-Level) Elements

Using the ‘`float`’ property with any value other than ‘none’, any HTML element can be declared to be outside the normal flow of elements, and is then formatted as a block-level element. This is commonly done with images (`img`), so let’s consider one of those to see what happens in the formatting:

```
img { float: left; }  
body, p, img { margin: 1em; }
```



Did you notice the “*collapsed vertical margins*” at the top (but *not* with the `img`) (and also how margins are *not* collapsed horizontally)?

## Reference Guide:- CSS

There are 2 situations in which floating, block-level elements can overlap with the margin, border and padding areas of other elements:

1. when the floating element has a negative margin  
Negative margins on floating elements are honoured, just as they are on other block-level elements
2. when the floating element is wider or higher than it's parent element

As always, far easier to show than to explain. Nevertheless, we have 2 sides to our brains, so here are the rules (and, as always, remember that when you see the word 'inner', we have a *content*-centric view, so 'inner' means inside the element margin, border *and* padding, whereas 'outer' means outside all those three):

A floating, block-level element is positioned subject to the following rules:

1. The left outer edge of a left-floating element may not be to the left of the left inner edge of its parent element (analogously for right-floating elements)
2. The left outer edge of a left floating element must be to the right of the right outer edge of every earlier (in the HTML source) left-floating element or, the top of the former must be lower than the bottom of the latter (analogously for right-floating elements)
3. The right outer edge of a left-floating element may not be to the right of the left outer edge of any right-floating element that is to the right of it (analogously for right-floating elements)
4. A floating element's top may not be higher than the inner top of its parent
5. A floating element's top may not be higher than the top of any earlier floating or block-level element
6. A floating element's top may not be higher than the top of any line-box with content that precedes the floating element in the HTML source
7. A floating element must be placed as high as possible
8. A left-floating element must be put as far to the left as possible (right-floating element as far to the right as possible). A higher position is preferred over one that is further to the left (right)

And once again: phew!

### Inline Elements:

The W3C spends an awful lot of space in talking about block-level element CSS formatting, and [relatively very little](#) on inline-elements. This PDF will try to explain the latter a little more thoroughly.

*W3C definition:* Elements that are not formatted as block-level elements are inline elements.

Most of the HTML elements in all the web-documents on the Internet are inline elements. That becomes obvious, just as soon as you realise that the commonest inline element is *text* (words). In fact, each & every *letter* in a word is essentially an inline element (unless it has had its `display` property changed to 'block'). It is simply that, within the [HTML elements](#), whilst you will find many elements that affect the *appearance* of text, and also many elements that can *contain* text, there is not a single element that *is* text. Nevertheless, as inline element formatting is entirely based on the established principles of text-formatting (derived from DTP ('Desk-Top Publishing'), which itself was derived from magazine & newspaper typography, which themselves drew upon principles established by the earliest printers, going back thousands of years and cast (literally) in die by the earliest mechanical printing presses of Gutenberg & others in the 14<sup>th</sup> Century), it seems to me that anyone who wants to attempt to use CSS within HTML documents should have a chance to understand the basic principles, and the terms used, and what they mean. So, let's start with a brief intro:



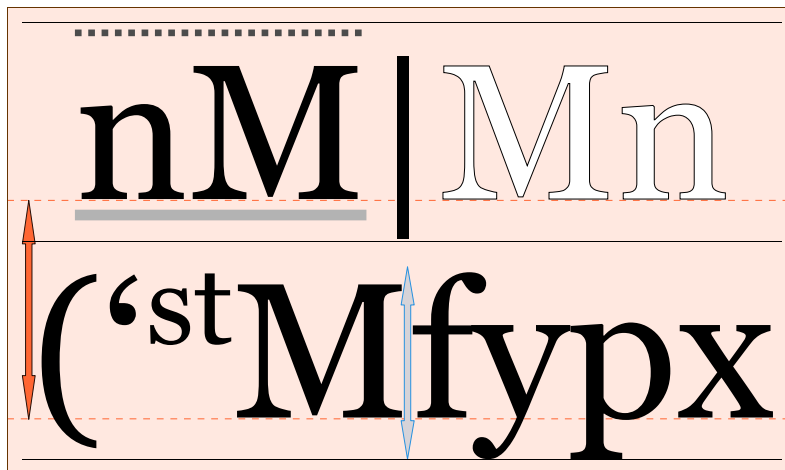
Above is some centred 72-point Georgia text, set single-space with default-leading, and with 0.5pt hairlines placed above & below each paragraph-line so that you can see the line-height. The first 2 letters ('nM') have a solid underline plus a dotted overline, whilst the last 2 letters on that line ('Mn') are shown as outline characters (which lets you see their mathematical shapes, because this font is drawn in curves rather than bit-mapped). The character in the middle is an 'upright bar' (ox7c), which goes from just above the bottom descender to just below the top ascender.

The second line shows some lower-case letters plus punctuation. Notice how the letters with *descenders* ('y' & 'p') go all the way to the bottom, and that the 'f' actually overhangs the left-most part of the 'y' (called 'pair kerning') and rises *above* the capital 'M'. Finally, the 'st' are in *superscript* text.



### The Baseline

Now that you have been introduced to each other, let's start to define some important names & ideas. The first is the notion of a “Baseline”, and we will immediately find ourselves mired in controversy as someone, somewhere, has made a dumb decision which, once again, we all have to live with.



Here is the identical box & text as before, but with a *Baseline* (orange dashes) added for both lines of text (plus an **orange vertical arrow**, showing the *typographic* measure of line-height—which is upwards, from baseline-to-baseline—and also a **blue vertical arrow**—72 points high, stretching from just below the bottom of the lowest descender to just above the tallest ascender—to help you visualise what a font-height actually means).

So, the *Baseline* is the imaginary, horizontal line that most characters (certainly in Latin text) sit upon. So, where is the controversy?

Professional DTP, just like the publishing industry, bases its text layout upon the *Baseline*. CSS bases its text layout upon the “*line-box*”, which is essentially the text line-height with the text itself embedded centrally within it (**more later**). That latter is most foolish; the baseline is *the* consistent feature within all fonts, and basing layout upon the baseline allows different fonts & families & sizes to be placed within the same line of text, yet look OK (which is why printers did that). On the other hand, the CSS designer's choice allows you to easily make a mixed-font page look like a dog's dinner.

It is easy to understand: some of the things that make different font families look different is the ratio of the height of lowercase letters to uppercase letters (eg ‘n’ compared to ‘M’), plus how far down the descenders go (‘yp’), or how far up the ascenders go (‘f’), and so on. It all changes the ratio of the distances from baseline to font bottom, and so on, and can be dramatically different between different fonts. To simply slap the font centrally within the line-height—a most ignorant decision—means that the baselines may not match up between different fonts, which then just looks wrong.

We need to look at CSS *line-box* formatting next, then will return to these text terms.

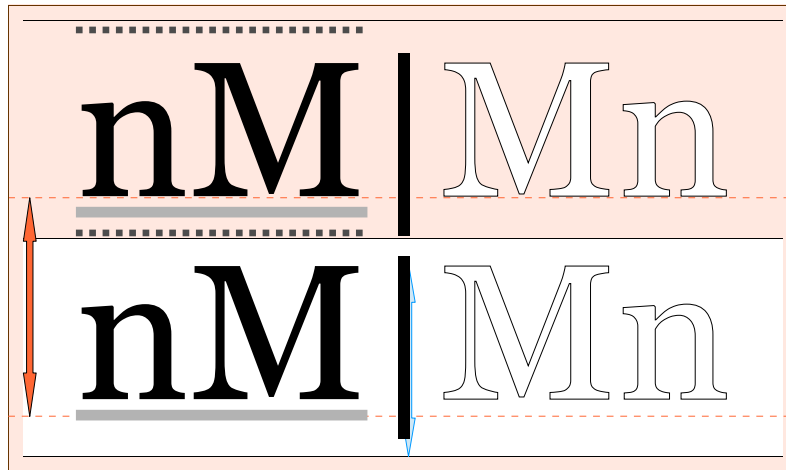


## Reference Guide:- CSS

### How the line-box is formatted

The notion of a “line-box” is based on the way that the browser will embed text within the centre of the line-height allocated to that text.

The W3C states: “All elements have a ‘line-height’ property that, in principle, gives the total height of a line of text. Space is added above and below the text of the line to arrive at that line height ... After formatting, each line will form a rectangular line-box”.



In order to show you this visually I’ve had to resort to a little print trickery, so this is a simulation rather than an exact show. The box above is identical to the previous one, except that the lower line of characters have been removed & replaced with the identical characters from the top line. Then (using the trickery) I’ve raised all the text in the lower paragraph so that it sits in the middle, between the 2 hairlines (if you concentrate upon the upright bar, which is *almost* the same height as the font, that becomes clearer). In the end, the top line (pink background) shows you how the print industry does it, and the bottom line (white background) shows you how HTML + CSS does it.

Now, in order to explain this better we need to introduce another important term from the print industry:

### Leading

“Leading” is the space between the lines of text and, for hundreds of years, was just that:- a thin strip of lead placed between the blocks that held the lines of text, with the whole thing—paragraphs of text + lead separators—held together with wooden (later metal) vices.

Earlier, it was said that the text in all those pink boxes is ‘72pt Georgia’ (the words in *these* paragraphs are 12pt Georgia). More accurately, the text is ‘72/84pt Georgia’; the ‘72 point’ is the [font-size](#), whilst the ‘84 point’ is the [line-height](#). ‘Leading’ is the difference between the two, so the (virtual) lead placed between each line of 72pt Georgia text is 12 points thick. Notice that in print the lead is placed *above* each line of text, but in HTML + CSS *half* (6 points) is placed above & half is placed below. Also, via the trickery of computers, in HTML the lead can be *negative* (good trick), allowing the text to either be very close (imagine it is ALL CAPITALS) or even overlap.

## Reference Guide:- CSS

### Pt, Points

“Point” is the standard (and smallest) measure for fonts in the print industry. These days, it is defined as:

72 points == 72pt  
== 1 inch  
== 2.54cm

### em

“em” is the same as the current `font-size`. So, our 72-point Georgia font has an em-width of 72pt (it originally is supposed to come from the width of the letter “M” in a font, although that letter is actually very rarely fully as wide as the font-size).

### Kerning

“Kerning” got a brief mention with the first pink box, where it was pointed out that, in the 2 letters “fy”, the top of the ‘f’ extended *over* the top of the left-part of the ‘y’. The text in the pink boxes has “*pair kerning*” turned on (as does all this text), and it is *kerning* that allows that to happen. CSS1 does not have any properties for kerning (though [CSS3 does](#), so let’s look at it).

Every computer font that is not `monospaced` has pair-kerning tables as part of the font (each font contains far more than just the characters). These tables apply to *pairs* of characters; one of the most extreme examples is “AV” (look how much *those* two characters overlap!) and, if you think about it just a little, it is obvious that some character-pairs are likely to be able to be kerned, whilst others never will be (how about “OO”?). The information within the tables is unique to each font, and placed there by the font designer.

Why kern? The most obvious answer is that it allows more characters on the line, but another is that it reads easier when kerned and also, somehow, looks more *professional*.

Here is the [W3C definition from CSS3](#): “Kerning is the contextual adjustment of inter-glyph spacing”.

### Justification

“*Justification*” has some connections with kerning but is actually different (both involve changing the ‘normal’ horizontal placing of a text character within the line-box). Kerning involves reducing ‘normal’ inter-character spacing, whilst *justification* involves changing ‘normal’ inter-word spacing (although in print it may sometimes also involve the characters *inside* a word, particularly in narrow columns when there is just one word on the line, when the word can be set to be expanded to fit the width). Note that the *last* line in a justified paragraph is not normally justified.

Now we can look at inline-element formatting on the canvas:

### Inline-Element Formatting:

*Key feature 1:* [css Properties](#) are not applied directly to text, but instead are applied to HTML elements that can *contain* text.

*Key feature 2:* all of the main Properties that affect text ([colour](#), [font](#) & [text](#)) are inherited, with the sole exception of [text-decoration](#) & [vertical-align](#).

*Key feature 3:* different browsers can have different defaults for text (and also for the [Box Properties](#)); those defaults can also vary by os (“*Operating System*”).

The above means that you are strongly advised to place a whole set of [css Properties](#) upon [body](#) within your base stylesheet. [body](#) is the first HTML element within the HTML object tree that displays upon the canvas, and it is guaranteed to always be present (even if it does not appear within the HTML markup). Doing that will both ensure that your whole site has a similar look ‘n’ feel, and also that it keeps that look ‘n’ feel no matter what browser nor os your readers use. That will help to give a professional style to what you write, and *that* will help to give your readers the confidence that you know what you are doing (and therefore saying).

Inline-elements form part of the flow of HTML elements within a document. Any element with a [display](#) property of ‘block’ or ‘list-item’ (which includes [floating elements](#)) is removed from that flow & placed independantly upon the canvas, according to rules given previously within the [Block-Level Elements](#) section. For the rest, they are formatted within a [line-box](#), and that line-box flows across the display space and around any block-level elements. The nature of that latter flow is decided by the values of [float](#) & [clear](#) for the block-level element(s) (see also [Floating Elements](#)).

### *whitespace:*

Having created the [line-box](#) of inline-elements, the browser will render it upon the canvas. That will normally create many lines of text (just like these paragraphs; it is called text ‘*wrapping*’), meaning that the line-box is split into many smaller boxes, each of which are stacked on top of each other, with zero regard for any internal margin, border or padding. The position of those breaks—and whether there are any—is decided by the [white-space](#) property, since the line-box is wrapped *between* words, and ‘*whitespace*’ is defined as those characters that can *not* appear within words.

### *br:*

All of the words in the previous paragraph are now thrown into disarray by the [br](#) (“line break”) element, which forces the flow to be wrapped upon a fresh line at the point where it appears. Somehow, [br](#) got overlooked by css, and none of the css1 properties nor values can describe it’s behaviour. The W3C says “*CSS1-based formatters must treat ‘BR’ specially*”.

So far, we have spoken about the line-box as if all that it contains is text. Not only that: there has been an inherent assumption that all the text will be the same font, size & line-height throughout, and that is rarely the case, since mixing up the fonts & sizes in a structured manner can greatly improve the readability of your text. Further, there are non-text [inline-elements](#) to take into account. The final sub-sections within this section will try to take all of these variations into account.

### Replaced Elements:

Replaced elements can be either **Block-Level** or **inline**; we are only interested in inline elements within this section, so that essentially reduces it to either `img` or `object` elements. In practice, you are almost certain to set either of these elements (or any other inline replaced elements) to become **floating elements**, which then means that they then fall under the block-level element rules. Nevertheless, let's maintain the fiction that they are non-floating, inline replaced elements simply so that you can understand what the heck they are, and how they are formatted within the **line-box** (which will also assist with understanding what happens within the other sub-sections lower down).

*Definition:* A replaced element is an element which is replaced by content pointed to from the element.

Let's imagine that, for some crazy reason, you are going to place a 300x300px (pixel) image within your 12px line-height text...

Now, recall from the section on **how the line-box is formatted** that the text itself is placed character-by-character in the centre of the allotted **line-height**, and that any shortfall between font-height & line-height is filled with space evenly at top & bottom. So, your 10px text—in the **color** of the containing element—is formatted at plumb centre and 1px leading—in the **background-color** of the containing element—is added at top & bottom. When the browser reaches the image within the HTML flow, it knows where it starts (the next character position within the text-flow), but it cannot know how wide or tall it is unless you tell it.

*Hint:* always state the (formatted) dimensions for replaced elements within the html, else the browser may have to re-format the entire document below the element once it gets it, which is most unprofessional.

If the html tells the browser what the formatted dimension should be it can continue formatting the line-box. However, it still cannot place the formatted image in the allotted space until it gets it, and that may take many seconds. In addition, it does not know the *intrinsic* size of the image until it arrives (it could be a thumbnail, or the size of a bus, or anything inbetween).

This is how the browser handles the image **width** setting (and similar for **height**):

- `width: auto`  
The intrinsic width is used as the width of the element
- (any other value)  
The value is used and the replaced element is resized accordingly

The final item to consider for both width & height considerations is any replaced-element margin, border or padding properties, which will be added to width & height (that only happens with replaced elements and NOT with non-replaced inline elements, for whom the line-height is the line-height is the height of the line-box).

At this point the browser has the final, final height of the replaced element, and will format it within the centre of the line-box.

We now have an important question:

*“What happens if the top of the replaced element is above the top of the text (or the bottom below the text bottom)?”*

The answer is that the line-box height (for that line of inline elements) is increased to accommodate the element.

As the final item, all the rectangular line-boxes that make up the various lines of text are stacked immediately below each other, following the flow of HTML elements.

### *Effects of Padding, Border and/or Margin:*

If it is a non-replaced element, then the answer is simple: none!

Imagine that you have some emphasised text, and you want to create the emphasis with a dotted border all around the text, so you format an `em` with some `padding` & a `border`. Then, any text within the `em` will be formatted in the line-box with a border, separated from the text by the padding. Very nice.

If the `font` remains the same then the `text baseline` will be unaffected.

If the `line-height` remains the same then the line-box height will be unaffected, and adjacent line-boxes will be stacked as normal.

If the leading applied is too small & the border extends beyond it... well, the border will extend above & below into neighbouring line-boxes.

### *Effects of vertical-align:*

`vertical-align` allows the affected text to be raised or lowered from its default position within the line-box. That can dramatically affect the line-box height, and thus the appearance of the text. It is doubly difficult because different browsers have different intrinsic values for the different keywords. Fortunately, there is also a percentage value available, which can be negative...

The html `sub` & `sup` elements (also available as vertical-align keywords) will, by default, noticeably increase the line-height. That is because they not only lower (raise) the text substantially, and—in Firefox24 at least—below (above) the text-top, with vertical-align they also keep the font-size the same (which is one clue as to [how to fix it](#)).

The key feature for this section is that, if the top of the text rises into the top leading (and similar at the bottom), then the line-box height will be increased to accommodate the affected section, in exactly the same way as for replaced elements. Please note also that this paragraph is describing the [real-world of how browsers do things](#), rather than how the W3C *says* that it should be done (which is essentially: ‘the line-height is the final arbitrator’).

# Box Properties

### Properties:

- `border` (shorthand property)
- `border-width` (shorthand property)
- `clear`
- `float`
- `height`
- `margin` (shorthand property)
- `padding` (shorthand property)
- `width`

### **border properties:**

- `border-bottom` (shorthand property)
- `border-color`
- `border-left` (shorthand property)
- `border-right` (shorthand property)
- `border-style`
- `border-top` (shorthand property)

### **border-width properties:**

- `border-bottom-width`
- `border-left-width`
- `border-right-width`
- `border-top-width`

### **margin properties:**

- `margin-bottom`
- `margin-left`
- `margin-right`
- `margin-top`

### **padding properties:**

- `padding-bottom`
- `padding-left`
- `padding-right`
- `padding-top`

See also: [Getting boxy](#) to understand the W3C box-model.

## Classification Properties

*Properties:*

- `display`
- `list-style` (shorthand property)
- `list-style-image`
- `list-style-position`
- `list-style-type`
- `white-space`



## Colour & Background Properties

### Properties:

- `background` (shorthand property)
- `background-attachment`
- `background-color`
- `background-image`
- `background-position`
- `background-repeat`
- `color`

### Notes:

The following are *both* the colour of an element:

- `background` background colour
- `color` foreground colour

One of the important features to note is that the properties are inherited. `color` is inherited directly, but—because the background colour will show through (by virtue of the default ‘transparent’ value of `background-color`)—it also normally inherits.

Different browsers have different `background` & `color` defaults, so you are strongly advised to set these for `body` as to have a consistent look for the entire document, whatever it is viewed in.



# Font Properties

### Properties:

- `font`
- `font-family`
- `font-size`
- `font-style`
- `font-variant`
- `font-weight`

(shorthand property)

# Pseudo-classes & Pseudo-elements

- 1<sup>st</sup>-line pseudo-element
- 1<sup>st</sup>-letter pseudo-element
- Anchor pseudo-classes

### General Usage

#### Selectors:

Contextual selector: allowed at the end of the selector:

```
body p:first-letter { color: purple; }
```

Combined with classes:

- one pseudo-element allowed per selector
- normal class-names precede pseudo-class/element name

```
a.external:visited { color: blue; }
```

```
p.initial:first-letter { color: red; }  
<p class="initial">First paragraph</p>
```

#### Combination:

Pseudo elements can be combined:

```
p { color: red; font-size: 12pt; }  
p:first-letter { color: green; font-size: 200%; }  
p:first-line { color: blue; }
```

```
<p>Some text that ends up on two lines</p>
```

#### Pseudo-Class:

Anchor pseudo-classes have no effect on elements other than 'a'. Therefore, the element type can be omitted from the selector. The following 2 statements select the same element in CSS1:

```
a:link { color: red }  
:link { color: red }
```

## Text Properties

*Properties:*

- `letter-spacing`
- `line-height`
- `text-align`
- `text-decoration`
- `text-indent`
- `text-transform`
- `vertical-align`
- `word-spacing`

*see also:*

- `font` (shorthand property)

## Units

### Color Units:

This is either a keyword, or a numerical RGB specification.

**Keywords:** (case-insensitive):

White, Silver, Gray (sic), Black, Red, Maroon, Yellow, Olive, Teal, Aqua, Green, Lime, Blue, Navy, Fuschia & Purple.

These are originally derived from the Windows' VGA Palette. The W3C deliberately does not define those colours in the CSS1 specification (which means that browsers are free to do so). Below are the original VGA Palette settings together with their equivalent CSS numeric units:

white #fff #ffffff rgb(255,255,255) rgb(100%,100%,100%)	silver #ccc #c0c0c0 rgb(192,192,192) rgb(75%,75%,75%)	gray #888 #808080 rgb(128,128,128) rgb(50%,50%,50%)	black #000 #000000 rgb(0,0,0) rgb(0%,0%,0%)
red #f00 #ff0000 rgb(255,0,0) rgb(100%,0%,0%)	maroon #800 #800000 rgb(128,0,0) rgb(50%,0%,0%)	yellow #ff0 #ffff00 rgb(255,255,0) rgb(100%,100%,0%)	olive #880 #808000 rgb(128,128,0) rgb(50%,50%,0%)
teal #088 #008080 rgb(0,128,128) rgb(0%,50%,50%)	aqua #0ff #00ffff rgb(0,255,255) rgb(0%,100%,100%)	green #080 #008000 rgb(0,128,0) rgb(0%,50%,0%)	lime #0f0 #00ff00 rgb(0,255,0) rgb(0%,100%,0%)
blue #00f #0000ff rgb(0,0,255) rgb(0%,0%,100%)	navy #008 #000080 rgb(0,0,128) rgb(0%,0%,50%)	fuschia #f0f #ff00ff rgb(255,0,255) rgb(100%,0%,100%)	purple #808 #800080 rgb(128,255,128) rgb(50%,100%,50%)

### Numeric:

There are 4 formats that may be used; all are specified in the '[sRGB color-space](#)' (see also above for examples). All numeric values are clipped by the browser if out of scope:

- #rgb (hex triplets; 12-bit palette; max 4,096 colours)
- #rrggbb (hex triplets; 24-bit palette; max 16,777,216 colours)
- rgb(x,x,x) ('x' = 0 min, 255 max) (integer)
- rgb(y%,y%,y%) ('y' = 0.0% min, 100.0% max)




### Extras:

See overpage for a very useful hex-triplet colour-chart.

A 24-bit palette contains the max number of colours that a human can see.

### Note for UK children:

The Americans cannot spell 'colour' nor 'grey'!

RGB Hex Triplet Color Chart									
E-mail-ware...What a concept!									
If you find this chart helpful, send mail to Doug and say "Thanks!". jacobson@phoenix.net									
	FFFFFF	FFCCFF	FF99FF	FF66FF	FF33FF	FF00FF			
	FFFFCC	FFCCCC	FF99CC	FF66CC	FF33CC	FF00CC			
	FFFF99	FFCC99	FF9999	FF6699	FF3399	FF0099			
EEEEEE	FFFF66	FFCC66	FF9966	FF6666	FF3366	FF0066		00FF00	
DDDDDD	FFFF33	FFCC33	FF9933	FF6633	FF3333	FF0033		00EE00	
CCCCCC	FFFF00	FFCC00	FF9900	FF6600	FF3300	FF0000		00DD00	
BBBBBB	CCFFFF	CCCCFF	CC99FF	CC66FF	CC33FF	CC00FF		00CC00	
AAAAAA	CCFFCC	CCCCCC	CC99CC	CC66CC	CC33CC	CC00CC		00BB00	
999999	CCFF99	CCCC99	CC9999	CC6699	CC3399	CC0099		00AA00	
888888	CCFF66	CCCC66	CC9966	CC6666	CC3366	CC0066		009900	
777777	CCFF33	CCCC33	CC9933	CC6633	CC3333	CC0033		008800	
666666	CCFF00	CCCC00	CC9900	CC6600	CC3300	CC0000		007700	
555555	99FFFF	99CCFF	9999FF	9966FF	9933FF	9900FF		006600	
444444	99FFCC	99CCCC	9999CC	9966CC	9933CC	9900CC		005500	
333333	99FF99	99CC99	999999	996699	993399	990099		004400	
222222	99FF66	99CC66	999966	996666	993366	990066		003300	
111111	99FF33	99CC33	999933	996633	993333	990033		002200	
000000	99FF00	99CC00	999900	996600	993300	990000		001100	
FF0000	66FFFF	66CCFF	6699FF	6666FF	6633FF	6600FF		0000FF	
EE0000	66FFCC	66CCCC	6699CC	6666CC	6633CC	6600CC		0000EE	
DD0000	66FF99	66CC99	669999	666699	663399	660099		0000DD	
CC0000	66FF66	66CC66	669966	666666	663366	660066		0000CC	
BB0000	66FF33	66CC33	669933	666633	663333	660033		0000BB	
AA0000	66FF00	66CC00	669900	666600	663300	660000		0000AA	
990000	33FFFF	33CCFF	3399FF	3366FF	3333FF	3300FF		000099	
880000	33FFCC	33CCCC	3399CC	3366CC	3333CC	3300CC		000088	
770000	33FF99	33CC99	339999	336699	333399	330099		000077	
660000	33FF66	33CC66	339966	336666	333366	330066		000066	
550000	33FF33	33CC33	339933	336633	333333	330033		000055	
440000	33FF00	33CC00	339900	336600	333300	330000		000044	
330000	00FFFF	00CCFF	0099FF	0066FF	0033FF	0000FF		000033	
220000	00FFCC	00CCCC	0099CC	0066CC	0033CC	0000CC		000022	
110000	00FF99	00CC99	009999	006699	003399	000099		000011	
	00FF66	00CC66	009966	006666	003366	000066			
	00FF33	00CC33	009933	006633	003333	000033			
	00FF00	00CC00	009900	006600	003300	000000			
Copyright © 1995 Douglas R. Jacobson All Rights Reserved									

The above chart comes via [WDG](#) and is ©1995 Douglas R Jacobson.

Format (in order, no spaces):

1. **+ / -**  
default: '+'; negative units not always allowed (can also hit implementation limits if so)
2. **number**  
decimal point is optional
3. **2-letter abbreviation**  
optional for zero

*example:*

`-0.1em`

There are 2 kinds of length units:

### 1. Relative

These scale well between different media. Possibly the best example is if you print a webpage, when both a monitor & a printer page should look the same, yet at very different resolutions.

*supported relative units:*

- **em**  
'em' == font-size = unit of font width/height  
Traditionally this is the height of a capital M in a font, and equal to both it's height & width. The definition has been retained for digital fonts, even though some (non-English) fonts do not contain that character.
- **ex**  
'ex' == height of a lowercase 'x' in a font  
Possibly the least-used unit of length. Like 'em', it is defined whether the font contains that letter or not.
- **px**  
'px' = 'pixel' (and thus are relative to the canvas)  
This unit would be fine if we knew what the size of the canvas, or even the resolution of the canvas, was, but we cannot, which can make this a most dangerous unit to use.

### 2. Absolute

These are dependant on the output medium. That is fine if you know what that medium will be, but can then restrict your audience.

*supported absolute units:*

- **cm**  
'cm' = 'centimetre'; 1cm == 0.39in
- **in**  
'in' = 'inch'; 1in == 2.54cm
- **mm**  
'mm' = 'millimetre'; 10mm == 1cm
- **pc**  
'pc' = 'pica'; 1pc == 12pt; 6pc == 1in
- **pt**  
'pt' = 'point'; 72pt == 1in

*Notes:*

'em' and 'ex': these are relative to the font size of the element itself, except for 'font-size', where they refer to the font size of the *parent* element.

Child elements inherit the computed value, not the relative value.

Browsers are allowed to make implementation-specific changes to lengths.

An example is font-size, where the font gets mapped to the nearest whole pixel. For all CSS1 properties, further computations and inheritance are then based on the approximated value & not the original value.

## Percentage Units:

**Format:** (in order, no spaces):

1. `+ / -`  
default: '+'; negative units not always allowed (may hit implementation limits if so)
2. `number`  
decimal point is optional
3. `'%'`

**example:** `-120.8%`

**Notes:** Percentage values are always relative to another value; each property that allows percentage units also defines what value the percentage value refers to. Most often this is the font size of the element itself.

In all inherited CSS1 properties, if the value is specified as a percentage, child elements inherit the resultant value, not the percentage value.

## URLs:

**Format:** (in order):

- `'url('`
- `white-space`  
(optional)
- `single quote (') or double quote (") character`  
(optional) (must be balanced if included)
- `The Uniform Resource Locator (URL) itself`  
as defined in [RFC1738](#)
- `white-space`  
(optional)
- `'')`

**example:** `url(http://www.bg.com/pinkish.gif)`

**Notes:** Parentheses, commas, whitespace characters, single quotes (') and double quotes (") appearing in a URL must be escaped with a backslash:  
`\(, '\, \., \', \", \"`

Partial URLs are interpreted relative to the source of the style sheet, not relative to the document.

**Hint:**

Make life easy on yourself:

1. Do not use partial URLs
2. URL-encode the URL & avoid having to quote (or back-slash) it at all:

eg

`"http://a.tld/with two spaces/"`

...becomes...

`http://a.tld/with%20two%20spaces/`

## Property Value Syntax

Each *CSS Property* value in this Guide is given in a syntax that may faze you if you are not a seasoned coder. It's not too difficult, and at the bottom of each Property page is an example to try to help.

*examples:* Some of the syntax that you might expect to see:

- Value: N | NW | NE
- Value: [ <length> | thick | thin ]{1,4}
- Value: [<family-name> , ]\* <family-name>
- Value: <url>? <color> [ / <color> ]?
- Value: <url> || <color>

*angle brackets:*

<length>, <family-name>, <color>, <url>

Words enclosed by *angle brackets* ('<>') are specific *types* of value. If the word is a blue link, then that value *type* may apply to more than one CSS Property, and you will need to click on the link to see what values can be entered. If not, then the type will be described further down the page at "*Extras*".

*literals:*

N, NW, NE, thick, thin

If *not* enclosed by *angle brackets* then it is a literal *keyword*, and to be used must be entered exactly as shown, without quotes. Any slash ('/') or comma (',') must also appear literally.

a b c

(not exempld at top) More than one thing juxtaposed together means:-  
"all must be entered, and in the order shown".

*upright bar:*

<length> | thick | thin

The bar ('|') means "*either/or*", so this example means:-  
"<length> or thick or thin" (just one)

*double-bar:*

<url> || <color>

The double-bar ('||') means "*either/both*", so this example means:-  
"<url> or <color>, or both" (in any order)

*square brackets:*

[ <length> | thick | thin ]

Square brackets ('[]') are a *grouping* mechanism. This makes more sense with the modifiers (bottom).

a b | c || d e

[ a b ] | [ c || [ d e ] ]

(not exempld at top—the two examples are equivalent to each other)

- Juxtaposition is stronger than the double bar
- The double bar is stronger than the bar

*modifiers:*

- \* the preceding type, word or group is repeated **zero or more** times
- + the preceding type, word or group is repeated **one or more** times
- ? the preceding type, word or group is **optional**
- {1,4} the preceding is repeated at least **1**, and at most, **4** times



---

## **CSS Properties A - Z**


## 1<sup>st</sup>-line pseudo-element

**Syntax:** `:first-line`


**Description:** The 'first-line' pseudo-element is used to apply special styles to the first line as formatted on the canvas. Derived from extensive use in newspapers & magazines, it is little-used in web documents. There are a limited set of CSS properties that will be accepted with this element (see 'Extras' below).

**See also:** [Anchor pseudo-classes](#), [1<sup>st</sup>-line pseudo-element](#), [1st-letter pseudo-element](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Pseudo-classes and Pseudo-elements</a>
<b>Values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for pseudo-elements)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Accepted CSS Properties:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>clear</code></li> <li><a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a></li> <li><a href="#">Font Properties</a></li> <li><code>letter-spacing</code></li> <li><code>line-height</code></li> <li><code>text-decoration</code></li> <li><code>text-transform</code></li> <li><code>vertical-align</code></li> <li><code>word-spacing</code></li> </ul>
<b>Extra:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows all browsers to ignore all rules with 'first-line' or 'first-letter' in the selector or, alternatively, only support a subset of the properties on these pseudo-elements.

**Examples:**

```
p:first-line { font-variant: small-caps; }
```

THE ABOVE SPECIFIES, FOR THE FIRST LINE OF TEXT IN ALL [PARAGRAPH](#) ELEMENTS, that small capitals should be used.


# 1<sup>st</sup>-letter pseudo-element

**Syntax:**       :first-letter


**Description:** The 'first-letter' pseudo-element is used to apply special styles to the first letter as formatted on the canvas. Derived from extensive use in newspapers & magazines, it is little-used in web documents. There are a limited set of CSS properties that will be accepted with this element (see 'Extras' below).

**See also:**     [Anchor pseudo-classes](#), [1<sup>st</sup>-line pseudo-element](#),  
[1<sup>st</sup>-letter pseudo-element](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Pseudo-classes and Pseudo-elements</a>
<b>Values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for pseudo-elements)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Accepted CSS Properties:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">border properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">clear</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">float</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Font Properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">line-height</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">margin properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">padding properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">text-decoration</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">text-transform</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">vertical-align</a> (only if 'float' is 'none')</li> <li>• <a href="#">word-spacing</a></li> </ul>
<b>Extra:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows all browsers to ignore all rules with ':first-line' or ':first-letter' in the selector or, alternatively, only support a subset of the properties on these pseudo-elements.

**Examples:**

```

p                { font-size: 12pt; line-height: 12pt; }
p:first-letter { font-size: 200%; float: left; }
span            { text-transform: uppercase; }

```

The above specifies, for text in all [paragraph](#) elements, that a dropcap initial letter spanning two lines should be used.


# Anchor pseudo-classes

**Syntax:** `a:<pseudo-class-values>`

**Description:** A browser will typically use different styles for new links & recently-visited links, and yet another style when the mouse hovers over a link; here's how. This pseudo-class acts only on `a` elements with an 'href' attribute; each one is then moved into one (only) of 3 groups. Note: 'active' == 'hover'.

**See also:** [Anchor pseudo-classes](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Pseudo-classes and Pseudo-elements</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>active</code>   <code>link</code>   <code>visited</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for pseudo-class properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<code>a</code> elements with 'href' attribute
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>misc:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pseudo-class &amp; normal class selectors will not match</li> <li>Case-insensitive</li> <li>target anchors are unaffected</li> <li>Can be used <i>contextually</i>:  <pre>a:link img { border: solid blue; }</pre> </li> <li>Can be combined with normal classes:  <pre>a.ext:visited { color: blue; } &lt;a class="ext" href="http://out.side/"&gt;outside&lt;/a&gt;</pre> <p>(normal class names precede pseudo-class names in the selector)</p> </li> <li>Reformatting is the browser's choice            The 3 pseudo-classes may format on the canvas with different line-heights, widths, etc. Therefore a pseudo-class-transition—particularly between 'active' &amp; either of the other two—may normally require a page re-format.         </li> </ul>
--------------	--

**Examples:**

```
a:link { color: red; }           /* unvisited link */
a:visited { color: blue; }      /* visited link */
a:active { color: lime; }       /* active link */
```

The above specifies, for all `a` elements with a 'href' attribute, the text colours used within their differing states.

## background

**Syntax:** background: <values>

**Description:** background is a shorthand property for setting any/all of the individual background properties.

**See also:** background, background-attachment, background-color, background-image, background-position, background-repeat, color

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Colour & Background Properties
<b>Values:</b>	<background-color>    <background-image>    <background-repeat>    <background-attachment>    <background-position>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a>

**Extras:**

<b>Values:</b>	See the individual properties for all the values that refer.
<b>Note:</b>	background always sets all the individual background properties. Any missing properties are set to their initial value.

**Examples:**

```
p { background: url(chess.png) gray 50% repeat fixed }
```

The above specifies, as a default for [paragraphs](#), *all the possible background properties*.


## background-attachment

**Syntax:** background-attachment: <values>


**Description:** background-attachment is effective when a [background-image](#) has been specified, and sets whether it is fixed with regard to the canvas, or if it scrolls along with the content.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	scroll   fixed
<b>Initial values:</b>	scroll
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows all browsers to treat 'fixed' as 'scroll'. (though the W3C hopes that 'fixed' will be supported on at least the <a href="#">html</a> & <a href="#">body</a> elements).
---------------	---

**Examples:**

```
body { background-attachment: scroll; }
```

The above specifies, (as is the default) for [the entire document](#), that *a background image will scroll with the content*.


## background-color

**Syntax:** `background-color: <values>`


**Description:** `background-color` sets the *background* colour of an element.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;color&gt;</code>   <code>transparent</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>transparent</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>A good habit:</b>	Get into the habit—if you specify either <code>color</code> or <code>background-color</code> —of always specifying <i>both</i> . It will save you much future grief.
<b>Inherited:</b>	In spite of not being inherited, the default of ‘transparent’ means that the colour of parent elements will always show through. In addition, different browsers on different platforms may have different values for the <code>body</code> element, so you are well advised to set both the base <code>color</code> & <code>background-color</code> for all of your own docs.
<b>Accessibility:</b>	Folks are all different. Some have 20:20 vision, others need to expand the text to have a chance to read it. Some can see all 16 million colours in a 24-bit palette, yet red-green is the <a href="#">commonest colour-blindness</a>  around (7% of all men).  <i>It is simple:</i> you want it to look good, but give a little thought as you design your pages, so that all strokes of folks have a good chance of not thinking it to be completely <i>naff</i> .

**Examples:**

```
body { color: yellow; background-color: aqua; }
```

The above specifies, as a default for the entire document, a [splendid combo of yellow text on an aqua background](#).


## background-image

**Syntax:** background-image: <values>

**Description:** background-image sets the background image of an element. When available, the image will overlay the background colour.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<url>   none
<b>Initial values:</b>	none
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>A good habit:</b>	Get into the habit of <i>also</i> setting <a href="#">background-color</a> for when the image is inaccessible.
----------------------	--

**Examples:**

```
body { background-image: url(marble.gif); color: white; }
```

The above specifies, as a default for [the entire document](#), a *marbled background, with a default of 'white'*.




## background-position

**Syntax:** background-position: <values>

**Description:** background-position is effective when a [background-image](#) has been specified, and sets it's initial position. See 'Extras' for values.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	[<percentage>   <length>]{1,2}   [top   center   bottom]    [left   center   right]
<b>Initial values:</b>	0% 0%
<b>% values:</b>	refer to the size of the element itself
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> and replaced elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Values:</b>	<p><b>Important!:</b> 'top left' in all below refers to the top-left point of the element <i>content</i>, and not to the boxes that surround the padding, border or margin.</p> <p>Combinations of 'length' and '%' values are allowed (eg '50% 2cm'), as are negative values. Keywords are single or pairs, but can NOT be combined with '%' nor 'length' values.</p> <p><a href="#">background-attachment</a>: If the background image is fixed with regard to the canvas, the image is placed relative to the canvas rather than the element.</p>
<b>'%' values:</b>	<p>'0% 0%' == 'top left'.</p> <p>'100% 100%' == the bottom-right of image is at element bottom-right.</p> <p>'14% 84%' == the point 14% across and 84% down the image is to be placed at the point 14% across and 84% down the element.</p>
<b>'length' values:</b>	<p>'2cm 2cm': the upper left corner of the image is placed 2cm to the right and 2cm below the upper left corner of the element.</p> <p>(cont next page)</p>

<i>Two '%' or 'length' values:</i>	The 1 <sup>st</sup> value will be the horizontal (x) position; the 2 <sup>nd</sup> value will be the vertical (y) position.
<i>One '%' or 'length' value:</i>	The value will be the x-position, whilst the y-position will be 50%.
<i>Keywords:</i>	<p>'top left' == 'left top' == '0% 0%' 'top' == 'top center' == 'center top' == '50% 0%' 'top right' == 'right top' == '100% 0%' 'left' == 'left center' == 'center left' == '0% 50%' 'center' == 'center center' == '50% 50%' 'right' == 'right center' == 'center right' == '100% 50%' 'bottom left' == 'left bottom' == '0% 100%' 'bottom' == 'bottom center' == 'center bottom' == '50% 100%' 'bottom right' == 'right bottom' == '100% 100%'</p>

### Examples:

```
body { background: url(banner.jpeg) right top; }
```

The above specifies, as a default for [the entire document](#), a *banner placed at the top right of the entire content*.


## background-repeat

**Syntax:** background-repeat: <values>

**Description:** background-repeat specifies if—and only if—a [background-image](#) is also specified, how (and whether) that image will be repeated. See ‘Extras’ for the meaning of the *Values*.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Colour &amp; Background Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	repeat   repeat-x   repeat-y   no-repeat
<b>Initial values:</b>	repeat
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Values:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• repeat: both horizontally and vertically</li><li>• repeat-x: just horizontally</li><li>• repeat-y: just vertically</li><li>• no-repeat: don't bother with either</li></ul>
----------------	--

**Examples:**

```
body { background-repeat: repeat; }
```

The above specifies, as a default for [the entire document](#), to *repeat that annoying gif endlessly across the entire document*.


## border

**Syntax:** `border: <values>`

**Description:** `border` is a shorthand property for setting the same width, colour and style on all four borders of an element at once. Unlike the shorthand '`margin`' and '`padding`' properties, '`border`' cannot set different values on the four borders. To do so, one or more of the other border properties must be used.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top](#), [border-right](#), [border-bottom](#), [border-left](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Box Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;border-width&gt;    &lt;border-style&gt;    &lt;color&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

One value only for each:	One value only may be given for each of <a href="#">border-width</a> , <a href="#">border-style</a> & <a href="#">color</a> (a total of one, two or three values).
Order+ specificity is important:	<p>Due to overlapping functionality, the order in which the rules are (or not) specified can become important:</p> <pre>blockquote {   border-color: red;   border-left: double;   color: black; }</pre> <p>The lack of a '<a href="#">color</a>' specification in <code>border-left</code> causes the left border to be black, whilst others are red.</p>

**Examples:**

```
p { border: thin solid red; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a *thin solid red border*.


## border-bottom

**Syntax:** `border-bottom: <values>`

**Description:** `border-bottom` is a shorthand property for setting the same width, colour and style on an element's bottom border. Any omitted values will be set to their initial values (browser determined if not inherited).

**See also:** `border`, `border-top`, `border-right`, `border-bottom`, `border-left`

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;border-bottom-width&gt;    &lt;border-style&gt;    &lt;color&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

One value only for each:	One value only may be given for each of <code>border-bottom-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> & <code>color</code> (a total of one, two or three values).
--------------------------	--

**Examples:**

```
p { border-bottom: thin solid blue; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a *thin solid blue bottom-border*.


## border-bottom-width

**Syntax:** `border-bottom-width: <values>`

**Description:** `border-bottom-width` sets the width of an element's bottom border, using a keyword or `<length>`.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top-width](#), [border-right-width](#), [border-bottom-width](#), [border-left-width](#), [border-width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Width Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>thin</code>   <code>medium</code>   <code>thick</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>medium</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>○ Border widths cannot be negative.</li><li>○ Keyword values are browser-dependent, but the following will always hold true:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● 'thin' &lt;= 'medium' &lt;= 'thick'</li><li>● Keyword widths will remain constant throughout a document, regardless of font-width.</li></ul></li></ul>
---------------	--

**Examples:**

```
h5 { border-bottom-width: thick; }
```

The above specifies, for `h2` headers, to use a *thick bottom-border*.


## border-color

**Syntax:** `border-color: <values>`

**Description:** `border-color` is a property for setting the colour on all 4 borders at once; colours may be all the same (1 `color` value required) or all different (4 `color` values required). If 2 or 3 values are given, then missing values are taken from the opposite side. See 'Extras' for the ordering of values.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-color](#), [border-style](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;color&gt;{1,4}</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	Value of the ' <code>color</code> ' property
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Order &amp; Values:</b>	<p>One value only may be given to set all 4 borders to the same colour. Any other number of <code>color</code> values affects the borders in a specific order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. top</li> <li>2. right</li> <li>3. bottom</li> <li>4. left</li> </ol> <p>2 values:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. top &amp; bottom</li> <li>2. right &amp; left</li> </ol> <p>3 values:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. top</li> <li>2. right &amp; left</li> <li>3. bottom</li> </ol> <p>Zero <code>color</code> values: the value of the '<code>color</code>' property of the element itself will take its place</p>
----------------------------	---

**Examples:**

```
p { border-color: blue navy fuchsia purple; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a *blue top-, navy right-, fuchsia bottom- & purple left-border*.


## border-left

**Syntax:** `border-left: <values>`

**Description:** `border-left` is a shorthand property for setting the same width, colour and style on an element's left border. Any omitted values will be set to their initial values (browser determined if not inherited).

**See also:** `border`, `border-top`, `border-right`, `border-bottom`, `border-left`

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;border-left-width&gt;    &lt;border-style&gt;    &lt;color&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

One value only for each:	One value only may be given for each of <code>border-left-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> & <code>color</code> (a total of one, two or three values).
--------------------------	--

**Examples:**

```
p { border-left: thick solid green; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a **thick solid green left-border**.




## border-left-width

**Syntax:** `border-left-width: <values>`

**Description:** `border-left-width` sets the width of an element's left border, using a keyword or `<length>`.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top-width](#), [border-right-width](#), [border-bottom-width](#), [border-left-width](#), [border-width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Width Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>thin</code>   <code>medium</code>   <code>thick</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>medium</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Border widths cannot be negative.</li> <li>○ Keyword values are browser-dependent, but the following will always hold true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 'thin' &lt;= 'medium' &lt;= 'thick'</li> <li>● Keyword widths will remain constant throughout a document, regardless of font-width.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
---------------	--

**Examples:**

```
h5 { border-left-width: thick; }
```

The above specifies, for `h3` headers, to use a *thick left-border*.


## border-right

**Syntax:** `border-right: <values>`

**Description:** `border-right` is a shorthand property for setting the same width, colour and style on an element's right border. Any omitted values will be set to their initial values (browser determined if not inherited).

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top](#), [border-right](#), [border-bottom](#), [border-left](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;border-right-width&gt;    &lt;border-style&gt;    &lt;color&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

One value only for each:	One value only may be given for each of <a href="#">border-right-width</a> , <a href="#">border-style</a> & <a href="#">color</a> (a total of one, two or three values).
--------------------------	--

**Examples:**

```
p { border-right: thick solid olive; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a **thick solid olive right-border**.




## border-right-width

**Syntax:** `border-right-width: <values>`

**Description:** `border-right-width` sets the width of an element's right border, using a keyword or `<length>`.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top-width](#), [border-right-width](#), [border-bottom-width](#), [border-left-width](#), [border-width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Width Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>thin</code>   <code>medium</code>   <code>thick</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>medium</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Border widths cannot be negative.</li> <li>○ Keyword values are browser-dependent, but the following will always hold true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 'thin' &lt;= 'medium' &lt;= 'thick'</li> <li>● Keyword widths will remain constant throughout a document, regardless of font-width.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
---------------	--

**Examples:**

```
h5 { border-right-width: thick; }
```

The above specifies, for `h4` headers, to use a *thick right-border*.


## border-style

**Syntax:** `border-style: <values>`


**Description:** `border-style` is a property for setting the style on all 4 borders at once; styles may be all the same (1 value required) or all different (4 values required). If 2 or 3 values are given, then missing values are taken from the opposite side. See '[border-color](#)' '*Extras*' for the ordering of values.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-color](#), [border-style](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>none</code>   <code>dotted</code>   <code>dashed</code>   <code>solid</code>   <code>double</code>   <code>groove</code>   <code>ridge</code>   <code>inset</code>   <code>outset</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Value meanings:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>none</code> no border (regardless of the '<code>&lt;border-width&gt;</code>' value)</li> <li><code>dotted</code> a dotted line drawn on top of the background of the element</li> <li><code>dashed</code> a dashed line drawn on top of the background of the element</li> <li><code>solid</code> the border is a solid line</li> <li><code>double</code> a double line drawn on top of the background of the element. The sum of the two single lines and the space between equals the '<code>&lt;border-width&gt;</code>' value</li> <li><code>groove</code> a 3D groove is drawn in colours based on the <code>&lt;color&gt;</code> value</li> <li><code>ridge</code> a 3D ridge is drawn in colours based on the <code>&lt;color&gt;</code> value.</li> <li><code>inset</code> a 3D inset is drawn in colours based on the <code>&lt;color&gt;</code> value</li> <li><code>outset</code> a 3D outset is drawn in colours based on the <code>&lt;color&gt;</code> value</li> </ul>
<a href="#">CSS1 Core</a> 	Browsers may interpret all of 'dotted', 'dashed', 'double', 'groove', 'ridge', 'inset' and 'outset' as 'solid'

**Examples:**

```
#xy34 { border-style: solid double; }
```

The above specifies, for id #xy34, *solid & double (up) borders*.


## border-top

**Syntax:** `border-top: <values>`

**Description:** `border-top` is a shorthand property for setting the same width, colour and style on an element's top border. Any omitted values will be set to their initial values (browser determined if not inherited).

**See also:** `border`, `border-top`, `border-right`, `border-bottom`, `border-left`

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;border-top-width&gt;    &lt;border-style&gt;    &lt;color&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

One value only for each:	One value only may be given for each of <code>border-top-width</code> , <code>border-style</code> & <code>color</code> (a total of one, two or three values).
--------------------------	---

**Examples:**

```
p { border-top: medium solid teal; }
```

The above specifies, for all [paragraphs](#), a *medium double teal top-border*.


## border-top-width

**Syntax:** `border-top-width: <values>`

**Description:** `border-top-width` sets the width of an element's top border, using a keyword or `<length>`.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top-width](#), [border-right-width](#), [border-bottom-width](#), [border-left-width](#), [border-width](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Border Width Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>thin</code>   <code>medium</code>   <code>thick</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>medium</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Extra:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Border widths cannot be negative.</li> <li>○ Keyword values are browser-dependent, but the following will always hold true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 'thin' &lt;= 'medium' &lt;= 'thick'</li> <li>● Keyword widths will remain constant throughout a document, regardless of font-width.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
---------------	--

### Examples:

```
h5 { border-top-width: thick; }
```

The above specifies, for `h5` headers, to use a *thick top-border*.


## border-width

**Syntax:** `border-width: <values>`

**Description:** `border-width` is a shorthand property (keyword or [<length>](#)) for setting the width on all 4 borders at once; widths may be all the same (1 value), all different (4 values) or a mixture (2 or 3 values—missing values are taken from the opposite side). See '[border-color](#)' '*Extras*' for ordering of values.

**See also:** [border](#), [border-top-width](#), [border-right-width](#), [border-bottom-width](#), [border-left-width](#), [border-width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Box Properties
<b>Values:</b>	[thin   medium   thick   <a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a> ]{1,4}
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Border widths cannot be negative.</li> <li>○ Keyword values are browser-dependent, but the following will always hold true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● 'thin' &lt;= 'medium' &lt;= 'thick'</li> <li>● Keyword widths will remain constant throughout a document, regardless of font-width.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
---------------	--

**Examples:**

```
h6 { border-width: thin; }
```

The above specifies, for [h6](#) headers, to use a *thin border*.


## clear

**Syntax:** `clear: <values>`

**Description:** `clear` specifies if an element allows floating elements on its sides. More specifically, the value of this property lists the sides where floating elements are not accepted. With `clear` set to 'left', an element will be moved below any floating element on the left side. With `clear` set to 'none', floating elements are allowed on all sides.

**See also:** [border](#), [clear](#), [float](#), [height](#), [margin](#), [padding](#), [width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Box Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	none   left   right   both
<b>Initial values:</b>	none
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	The obvious connection is with the 'clear' attribute of <a href="#">br</a> (introduced in HTML3.2). CSS allows a similar function to be applied to <i>any</i> element.
---------------	--

**Examples:**

```
table { clear: left; }
```

The above specifies, for all [table](#) elements, that they will be displayed *below* all floating elements at their left.




## color

**Syntax:** `color: <values>`

**Description:** `color` sets the *foreground* text colour of an element.

**See also:** [background](#), [background-attachment](#), [background-color](#), [background-image](#), [background-position](#), [background-repeat](#), [color](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Colour & Background Properties
<b>Values:</b>	<color>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(browser specific)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>A good habit:</b>	Get into the habit—if you specify either <code>color</code> or <code>background-color</code> —of always specifying <i>both</i> . It will save you much future grief.
----------------------	--

**Examples:**

```
body { color: maroon; background-color: fuschia; }
```

The above specifies, as a default for the entire document, a **delightful combo of maroon text on a fuschia background**.


## display

**Syntax:** `display: <values>`


**Description:** `display` is an exciting property that governs how—and indeed whether—an element will be displayed on the canvas.

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Classification Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>block</code>   <code>inline</code>   <code>list-item</code>   <code>none</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>block</code> (though also refer to HTML element default)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Extra:</b>	<p>The HTML Content model is broadly split between <a href="#">block-level</a> &amp; <a href="#">inline</a> elements ('list-items' are also block-level, with the extra that they also have a list-item marker). <code>display</code> allows the <i>author</i> to decide which of the two models the element should adhere to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <i>block</i>: opens a new block-box, positioned relative to adjacent boxes according to the CSS formatting model.</li> <li>○ <i>inline</i>: opens a new inline-box on the same line as the previous content; dimensions are according to the formatted size of the content. <a href="#">margin</a>, <a href="#">border</a> and <a href="#">padding</a> properties apply to inline elements, but do not have any effect at line breaks.</li> <li>○ <i>list-item</i>: it does not make any sense to apply this to any elements other than <a href="#">li</a>, <a href="#">ol</a> &amp; <a href="#">ul</a>.</li> <li>○ <i>none</i>: turns off display of the element, including child elements and the surrounding box.</li> </ul>
<b><a href="#">CSS1 Core</a> </b>	Browsers may ignore <code>display</code> and use only defaults.

### Examples:

```
em { display: inline; }
```

The above specifies, for `em` text, to ***display inline*** (which is also the default for `em` text)


# float

**Syntax:** `float: <values>`

**Description:** `float` can invalidate the `display` property. With a value of 'none' the element will be displayed where it appears within the text flow; all other values will cause it to be treated as a **block-level** element (invalidating `display`). 'left' will cause it to be moved left until the nearest **block-level** element is reached & text will wrap to the right (all vice-versa for 'right').

**See also:** [border](#), [clear](#), [float](#), [height](#), [margin](#), [padding](#), [width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Box Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	left   right   none
<b>Initial values:</b>	none
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>General:</b>	<code>float</code> governs how text wraps around an element. The obvious connection is with the 'align' attribute of <a href="#">img</a> (introduced in HTML3.2). CSS allows a similar function to be applied to <i>any</i> element.
<b>Specifics:</b>	By setting <code>float</code> to 'left':  The element is moved to the left until the margin, padding or border of another <b>block-level</b> element is reached (most often it's parent, containing element). The normal flow will wrap around on the right side. The margins, borders and padding of the element itself will be honoured, and the margins never collapse with the margins of adjacent elements.

**Examples:**

```
img { float: right; }
```

The above specifies, for all [img](#) elements, that they will be displayed at the side of the nearest **block-level** element to their right, and that surrounding text—and any other **inline** elements—will wrap to their left-hand side.

## font

**Syntax:** `font: <values>`

**Description:** `font` is a shorthand for *all* the `font` properties + `line-height` at once (a ‘font’ is the typeface used in a visual browser to show text). [The W3C says](#): “The syntax of this property is based on a traditional typographical shorthand notation to set multiple properties related to fonts”.

**See also:** `font`, `font-family`, `font-size`, `font-style`, `font-variant`, `font-weight`

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	Font Properties
<b>Values:</b>	[ <font-style>    <font-variant>    <font-weight> ]? <font-size> [ / <line-height> ]? <font-family>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	allowed on <font-size> and <line-height>
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a>

### Extras:

Font-Matching: per-property matching rules:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. ‘font-style’ is tried first. ‘italic’ will be satisfied if there is either a face in the UA’s font database labeled with the CSS keyword ‘italic’ (preferred) or ‘oblique’. Otherwise the values must be matched exactly or font-style will fail.</li> <li>2. ‘font-variant’ is tried next. ‘normal’ matches a font not labeled as ‘small-caps’. (A small-caps font can be synthesized electronically)</li> <li>3. ‘font-weight’ is matched next, it will never fail.</li> <li>4. ‘font-size’ must be matched within a UA-dependent margin of tolerance. (Typically, sizes for scalable fonts are rounded to the nearest whole pixel, while the tolerance for bitmapped fonts could be as large as 20%.) Further computations, e.g. by ‘em’ values in other properties, are based on the ‘font-size’ value that is used, not the one that is specified.</li> </ol>
--	--

### Examples:

```
p { font: italic bold 12pt/14pt Times, serif; }
```

The above specifies, for all paragraphs, a **12-point bold, italic Times font** with a 14-point line height; if the (specific name) “Times” font is not available to the browser then it will use a generic serif font instead.


## font-family

**Syntax:** `font-family: <values>`

**Description:** `font-family` is a prioritised list of font family names and/or generic family names; unlike most other CSS1 properties, values are separated by a comma to indicate that they are alternatives (fonts come in families of same-style typefaces). Names containing whitespace must be quoted.

**See also:** [font](#), [font-family](#), [font-size](#), [font-style](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Font Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	[[<family-name>   <generic-family>],]* [<family-name>   <generic-family>]
<b>Initial values:</b>	Determined by browser
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>family-name:</b>	The name of a specific Family.  Can be dangerous, as it is dependant on the browser being upon a device that has that specific Family of fonts installed.
<b>generic-family:</b>	(below is the generic, followed by a family example): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• serif (e.g., Times)</li> <li>• sans-serif (e.g., Arial or Helvetica)</li> <li>• <i>cursive</i> (e.g., <i>Zapf-Chancery</i>)</li> <li>• <i>fantasy</i> (e.g., <i>Western</i>)</li> <li>• monospace (e.g., Courier)</li> </ul> <p>Firefox contains it's own fonts for all the generics above, so I cannot reproduce the browser view here; I've chosen fonts above to try to approximate ('cursive', 'fantasy' are the least accurate).</p>

### Examples:

```
body { font-family: "New Century Schoolbook", serif; }
```

The above specifies, as the default font for [the document](#), a 'New Century Schoolbook' font (use either single- or double-quotes if there is whitespace in the name) with a generic serif font if the first is not available.


## font-size

**Syntax:** `font-size: <values>`

**Description:** `font-size` is, at first sight, a straightforward property: the size of the font. The key feature to keep in mind is that you cannot guess at the size of the view-window that your user has, which makes using *absolute* sizes (length) most dangerous.

**See also:** [font](#), [font-family](#), [font-size](#), [font-style](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Font Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>&lt;absolute-size&gt;</code>   <code>&lt;relative-size&gt;</code>   <a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>
<b>Initial values:</b>	medium
<b>% values:</b>	Relative to the parent element's font size
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

**absolute-size:** Possible values (note: this text is 10pt; 'px' transposed to 'pt' below):

xx-small | x-small | small | medium | large |

x-large | **xx-large**

In Firefox (parent:16px) these rendered as:

9px | 10px | 13px | 16px | 18px | 24px | 32px

**relative-size:** These are intended to be relative to the parent element:

**larger** | smaller

In Firefox (parent:16px) these rendered as:

18px | 13px

**Examples:**

```
em { font-size: 150%; }
```

The above specifies, for all [emphasised](#) text, a *larger font*; the W3C suggest to browser manufacturers that they use a 1.5 scaling factor.


## font-style

**Syntax:** `font-style: <values>`

**Description:** `font-style` selects between normal (sometimes referred to as “roman” or “upright”), *italic* and *oblique* (slanted) faces within a font family. The font that is labeled ‘oblique’ in the browser’s font database may actually have been generated by electronically slanting a normal font.

**See also:** [font](#), [font-family](#), [font-size](#), [font-style](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Font Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	normal   italic   oblique
<b>Initial values:</b>	normal
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

**italic v oblique:** Most font families have one font that is ‘italic’. Few have one that is ‘oblique’. In general, the oblique option is *more* slanted than the italic option.

*Historical notes:* ‘italic’ gained that name in England to differentiate it from the “*English chancery hand*”. ‘Chancery-hand’ in 16<sup>th</sup> Century England was derived from Gothic script (similar to *blackletter*) & was angular; The ‘Italian-hand’ was developed in Italy at that period; the pen was held slanted at a forty-five-degree angle, which allowed greater speed & also produced slightly slanted writing. All official documents at the time were hand-written & it was a legal requirement that they be produced in *Chancery-hand* (itself also scrupulously regulated). The development of the printing-press & typesetting eventually put many thousands of trained clerks out of business (and provided possibly less well-paid employment for many thousands more).

### Examples:

```
h1, h2, h3 { font-style: italic; }
```

The above specifies, for h1, h2 & h3 **headings**, an *italic font*. We could then, perhaps, say to use normal text within h1 *emphasised* headings:

```
h1 em { font-style: normal; }
```


## font-variant

**Syntax:** `font-variant: <values>`

**Description:** `font-variant` selects between a normal font or a SMALL-CAPS font.

**See also:** [font](#), [font-family](#), [font-size](#), [font-style](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	Font Properties
<b>Values:</b>	normal   small-caps
<b>Initial values:</b>	normal
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

What it is:	The browser <i>should</i> always get this right.  Some font-families have a small-caps font; many do not. It <i>should</i> be easy to synthesize it... If you look at this type you will notice that all the lowercase letters are on the same level. A <i>small-caps</i> font is supposed to have all-capitals that are at (slightly more than) the same height as the lowercase letters. Let's see if it works with this font:
-------------	--

CAPITALSSMALL-CAPSlowercase

...and the answer is *yes* (it looks OK).

### Examples:

```
span { font-variant: small-caps; }
```

The above specifies, for all text within the `span` element, a SMALL-CAPS FONT.




## font-weight

**Syntax:** `font-weight: <values>`

**Description:** `font-weight` is a method of specifying the *weight* of a font. Child elements inherit the *resultant* weight of the font, and not the *keyword*. Few font families have sufficient weights to populate all 9 levels, so choices must be made by the browser.

**See also:** [font](#), [font-family](#), [font-size](#), [font-style](#), [font-variant](#), [font-weight](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Font Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>normal   bold   bolder   lighter   100   200   300   400   500   600   700   800   900</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

**Help:** The weight of a font is different from it's size; whatever the weight, a 12pt/14pt font should always be 12 points high with a 14 point line-height. That can possibly be most easily understood with **bold text** (which most often has “`font-weight: 700`” - it depends on both the font, the browser & the host device). It is *very* seldom that a font has even 3 weights in the family, which essentially then reduces the values to “normal | bold”.

This is what those values look like on Firefox23 using the browser-supplied, generic serif font:

normal | **bold** | **bolder** | lighter  
100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | **600** | **700** | **800** | **900**

‘bolder | lighter’ refer to inherited values from the parent.

**Examples:**

```
strong { font: 900; }
```

The above specifies, for all `strong` text, the **most strongly weighted font** should be used.


# height

**Syntax:** `height: <values>`


**Description:** `height` is suggested to be used principally with replaced elements such as `img`. The element will be scaled if necessary (see *Extras* below).

**See also:** `border`, `clear`, `float`, `height`, `margin`, `padding`, `width`

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Box Properties
<b>Values:</b>	<length>   auto
<b>Initial values:</b>	auto
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	Block-level and replaced elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	CSS1 

**Extras:**

<b>General:</b>	Both <code>height</code> & <code>width</code> are considered together to find a replaced element's eventual dimensions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>height = 'auto'; width = 'auto':</code> set to intrinsic dimensions of element</li> <li><code>height = 'auto'; width = &lt;length&gt;:</code> <code>width</code> enforced by scaling, aspect ratio preserved</li> <li><code>height = &lt;length&gt;; width = 'auto':</code> <code>height</code> enforced by scaling, aspect ratio preserved</li> <li><code>height = &lt;length&gt;; width = &lt;length&gt;:</code> enforced by scaling, aspect ratio ignored</li> </ul>
<b>CSS1 Core </b>	Browsers may ignore <code>height</code> (treat it as 'auto') if the element is not a replaced element.

**Examples:**

```
img.icon { height: 100px }
```

The above specifies, for all `img` elements declared with a class of 'icon', that they will be displayed at a height of 100 pixels (note how that could be an issue on a very high-density display device).


# letter-spacing

**Syntax:** `letter-spacing: <values>`


**Description:** `letter-spacing` normalises / expands / contracts the *spacing* between letters. Negative values *are* allowed. Any value other than 'normal' will switch **justification** OFF. The browser is the ultimate resultant arbitrator.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

## Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>normal</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>normal</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

## Extras:

<b>length:</b>	<code>&lt;length&gt;</code> here is an addition/subtraction from the 'normal' intra-character spacing.  Too much extra will make the text look strange. Too much removed may hit implementation limits.
<b>normal:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows the browser to interpret <i>any</i> value of <code>letter-spacing</code> as 'normal'.
<b>Extra:</b>	<code>letter-spacing</code> is an internal function of the font first & the browser second. Each font contains information not just on the <i>glyph</i> (the font's picture of the character, whether that picture is a bitmap or a mathematical outline) but also on the 'normal' spacing between glyphs. As an implementor, the browser is then free to modify (expand/contract) those spacings, which is where this property has it's effect. The actual spacing used, however, will be <i>highly</i> context-specific, dependant on the display resolution & size, text size, etc..

## Examples:

```
blockquote { letter-spacing: 0.1em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `blockquote` elements, a *0.1em* increase in the *letter spacing* of all text within the element.


## line-height

**Syntax:** `line-height: <values>`

**Description:** `line-height` sets the distance between two adjacent text-lines' *baselines*. Negative values are *not* allowed.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>normal</code>   <code>&lt;number&gt;</code>   <code>&lt;length&gt;</code>   <code>&lt;percentage&gt;</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>normal</code>
<b>% values:</b>	Relative to the <a href="#">font-size</a> of the element itself
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

**Help:** `line-height` is normally a little larger than the font-size, to allow for the character *risers* & *descenders* (eg 'l' & 'g'). Each line of text is considered to have a *baseline*; the vertical distance between 2 adjacent *baselines* is the 'line-height'.

**Values' Brief:**

- `normal`: a browser-determined 'reasonable' value for the element's font (W3C: 1.0 to 1.2 times the size)
- `number`: element font-size multiplied by the number; child elements inherit the factor, not the resultant
- `%-value`: as number, except children inherit the resultant (a browser-computed end-value)

**Examples:**

```
div { line-height: 1.2; font-size: 10pt; }
```

The above specifies, for all `div` elements, a 10 point font with 12 point baseline-to-baseline line-height for all text contained in the element.


## list-style

**Syntax:** `list-style: <values>`

**Description:** `list-style` is a shorthand notation for setting the three properties 'list-style-type', 'list-style-image' and 'list-style-position' at the same place in the style sheet.

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	Classification Properties
<b>Values:</b>	[disc   circle   square   decimal   lower-roman   upper-roman   lower-alpha   upper-alpha   none]    [inside   outside]    [<url>   none]
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	Elements with <a href="#">display</a> value 'list-item'
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Advice:</b>	Set <i>list-style</i> rules on <a href="#">ol</a> & <a href="#">ul</a> elements only. Inheritance will pass the rules down to the <a href="#">li</a> elements quite naturally, whilst a combo of cascading order & inheritance can lead to unexpected results that will have you tearing your hair out.
----------------	---

### Examples:

```
ul { list-style: url(http://png.com/ellipse.png) disc; }
```

The above specifies, for [ul](#) elements, to *display a '●' as a list-item marker if the image is unavailable*.


## list-style-image

**Syntax:** `list-style-image: <values>`

**Description:** `list-style-image` sets the image that will be used as the list-item marker. When the image is available it will replace the marker set with the `list-style-type` marker.

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Classification Properties
<b>Values:</b>	<url>   none
<b>Initial values:</b>	none
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	Elements with <a href="#">display</a> value 'list-item'
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	See <a href="#">list-style-type</a> for a possible behaviour when the image cannot be loaded.
---------------	---

**Examples:**

```
ul { list-style-image: url(http://png.com/ellipse.png); }
```

The above specifies, for `ul` elements, to *display an image as a list-item marker* for contained `li` elements.


## list-style-position

**Syntax:** `list-style-position: <values>`

**Description:** `list-style-position` determines how the list-item marker is drawn with regard to the content. See *Extras* below to see what on earth that means.

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Classification Properties
<b>Values:</b>	inside   outside
<b>Initial values:</b>	outside
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	Elements with <a href="#">display</a> value 'list-item'
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Values:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>outside</i>: this is simply lots of words, intended to wrap and then show how this marker is <i>outside</i> the text.</li><li><i>inside</i>: this is simply lots of words, intended to wrap and then show how this marker is <i>inside</i> the text.</li></ul>
----------------	---

**Examples:**

```
ul { list-style: outside; }
```

The above specifies, for `ul` elements, to *display the list-item marker outside the text* (which is also the default).


## list-style-type

**Syntax:** `list-style-type: <values>`

**Description:** `list-style-type` decides on the appearance of the list-item marker, if `list-style-image` is 'none', or if the image pointed to by the URL cannot be displayed.

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Classification Properties
<b>Values:</b>	disc   circle   square   decimal   lower-roman   upper-roman   lower-alpha   upper-alpha   none
<b>Initial values:</b>	disc
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	Elements with <code>display</code> value 'list-item'
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Values:</b>	This an attempt to simulate the list-item markers in this PDF:
	<div>○ circle</div> <div>● disc</div> <div>■ square</div> <div>1. decimal</div> <div>a. lower-alpha</div> <div>i. lower-roman</div> <div>A. upper-alpha</div> <div>I. upper-roman</div> <div>none</div>

**Examples:**

```
ol { list-style-type: decimal; }
```

The above specifies, for `ol` elements, to *display decimal list-item markers* (1,2,3, etc.) (also the default) for contained `li` elements.




## margin

**Syntax:** `margin: <values>`


**Description:** `margin` is a shorthand property for setting the margin on all 4 sides of an element at once; margins may be all the same (1 value required) or all different (4 values required). If 2 or 3 values are given, then missing values are taken from the opposite side. See '[border-color](#)' '[Extras](#)' for the ordering of values.

**See also:** [border](#), [clear](#), [float](#), [height](#), [margin](#), [padding](#), [width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	Box Properties
<b>Values:</b>	[ < <a href="#">length</a> >   < <a href="#">percentage</a> >   auto ]{1,4}
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Negative values:</b>	Allowed, but there may be implementation-specific limits.
<b>Extra:</b>	The original docs (1996) on this property spoke of each of the 4 possible values being either a <a href="#">length</a> , a <a href="#">percentage</a> or 'auto'. The <a href="#">latest CSS1 docs</a>  (2008) speak only about <a href="#">length</a> , but do not explicitly exclude the other two, nor speak on the advisability nor otherwise of mixing value types in a single declaration.
<b>Remember:</b>	The <code>margin</code> is transparent.

**See also:** [margin-top](#), [margin-right](#), [margin-bottom](#), [margin-left](#)

**Examples:**

```
body { margin: 2em; }
```

The above specifies, for the `body` element, that it should have a margin of 2em (twice the height of the font-height setting) on all 4 sides.

The `body` element is the outermost visible container for the content. You may therefore have a philosophical discussion on who the `body.margin` affects...  
...and the answer is the `html` element, which is the top-level container.


# margin-bottom

**Syntax:** `margin-bottom: <values>`

**Description:** `margin-bottom` sets the margin at the bottom side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [margin](#), [margin-top](#), [margin-right](#), [margin-bottom](#), [margin-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Margin Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>   <code>auto</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>0</code>
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Allowed, but there may be implementation-specific limits.
<b>Remember:</b>	The <code>margin</code> is transparent.

### Examples:

```
dt { margin-bottom: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em margin outside the bottom border (1em == same as the font-height).


# margin-left

**Syntax:** `margin-left: <values>`

**Description:** `margin-left` sets the margin at the left side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [margin](#), [margin-top](#), [margin-right](#), [margin-bottom](#), [margin-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Margin Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>   <code>auto</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>0</code>
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Allowed, but there may be implementation-specific limits.
<b>Remember:</b>	The <code>margin</code> is transparent.

### Examples:

```
dt { margin-left: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em margin outside the left border (1em == same as the font-height).


# margin-right

**Syntax:** `margin-right: <values>`

**Description:** `margin-right` sets the margin at the bottom side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [margin](#), [margin-top](#), [margin-right](#), [margin-bottom](#), [margin-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Margin Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>   <code>auto</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>0</code>
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Allowed, but there may be implementation-specific limits.
<b>Remember:</b>	The <code>margin</code> is transparent.

### Examples:

```
dt { margin-right: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em margin outside the right border (1em == same as the font-height).


## margin-top

**Syntax:** `margin-top: <values>`

**Description:** `margin-top` sets the margin at the bottom side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [margin](#), [margin-top](#), [margin-right](#), [margin-bottom](#), [margin-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Margin Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>   <code>auto</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>0</code>
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Allowed, but there may be implementation-specific limits.
<b>Remember:</b>	The <code>margin</code> is transparent.

### Examples:

```
dt { margin-top: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em margin outside the top border (1em == same as the font-height).


## padding

**Syntax:** padding: <values>


**Description:** padding is a shorthand property for setting the padding on all 4 sides of an element at once; padding may be all the same (1 value required) or all different (4 values required). If 2 or 3 values are given, then missing values are taken from the opposite side. See 'border-color' 'Extras' for the ordering of values.

**See also:** [border](#), [clear](#), [float](#), [height](#), [margin](#), [padding](#), [width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Box Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	[ <length>   <percentage> ]{1,4}
<b>Initial values:</b>	(not defined for shorthand properties)
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Negative values:</b>	Cannot be negative.
<b>Extra:</b>	In contrast to <a href="#">margin</a> , the <a href="#">latest CSS1 docs</a>  (2008) speak about <i>values</i> , rather than one of the specific value types, when talking about using 1, 2, 3 or 4 values in the declaration
<b>Remember:</b>	Unlike <a href="#">margin</a> , padding is visible. It's color, etc. properties are set with the <a href="#">background</a> property.

**See also:** [padding-top](#), [padding-right](#), [padding-bottom](#), [padding-left](#)

**Examples:**

```
h4 { padding: 1em 2em; }
```

The above specifies, for all [h4](#) elements, that they will have 1em padding at top & bottom and 2em padding at left & right (1em == same as the font-height).


# padding-bottom

**Syntax:** padding-bottom: <values>

**Description:** padding-bottom sets the padding at the bottom side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [padding](#), [padding-top](#), [padding-right](#), [padding-bottom](#), [padding-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Padding Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<length>   <percentage>
<b>Initial values:</b>	0
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Cannot be negative.
<b>Remember:</b>	Unlike <a href="#">margin</a> , <a href="#">padding</a> is visible. It's color, etc. properties are set with the <a href="#">background</a> property.

### Examples:

```
dt { padding-bottom: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all [dt](#) elements, that they will have 0.5em padding inside the bottom border (1em == same as the font-height).


# padding-left

**Syntax:** `padding-left: <values>`

**Description:** `padding-left` sets the padding at the left side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [padding](#), [padding-top](#), [padding-right](#), [padding-bottom](#), [padding-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Padding Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>
<b>Initial values:</b>	0
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Cannot be negative.
<b>Remember:</b>	Unlike <a href="#">margin</a> , <a href="#">padding</a> is visible. It's color, etc. properties are set with the <a href="#">background</a> property.

### Examples:

```
dt { padding-left: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em padding inside the left border (1em == same as the font-height).




## padding-right

**Syntax:** `padding-right: <values>`

**Description:** `padding-right` sets the padding at the right side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [padding](#), [padding-top](#), [padding-right](#), [padding-bottom](#), [padding-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Padding Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>
<b>Initial values:</b>	0
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Cannot be negative.
<b>Remember:</b>	Unlike <a href="#">margin</a> , <a href="#">padding</a> is visible. It's color, etc. properties are set with the <a href="#">background</a> property.

### Examples:

```
dt { padding-right: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that they will have 0.5em padding inside the right border (1em == same as the font-height).


## padding-top

**Syntax:** padding-top: <values>

**Description:** padding-top sets the padding at the top side of an element.

**See also:** [border](#), [padding](#), [padding-top](#), [padding-right](#), [padding-bottom](#), [padding-left](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Padding Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<length>   <percentage>
<b>Initial values:</b>	0
<b>% values:</b>	Refer to width of closest <a href="#">block-level</a> ancestor
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Negative values:</b>	Cannot be negative.
<b>Remember:</b>	Unlike <a href="#">margin</a> , <a href="#">padding</a> is visible. It's color, etc. properties are set with the <a href="#">background</a> property.

### Examples:

```
dt { padding-top: 0.5em; }
```

The above specifies, for all [dt](#) elements, that they will have 0.5em padding inside the top border (1em == same as the font-height).


## text-align

**Syntax:** `text-align: <values>`


**Description:** `text-align` determines how text will be aligned within the element. *'justify'*: the actual algorithm used is browser and human language dependent (some are left-to-right whilst others are right-to-left).

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	left   right   center   justify
<b>Initial values:</b>	Browser specific
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>justify:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows the browser to treat 'justify' as 'left' or 'right' (in that case, depending on whether the element's default writing direction is left-to-right or right-to-left, respectively.)
<b>Extra:</b>	Justification is an external function of the browser which depends upon the internal function of the font. See " <a href="#">letter-spacing</a>   <a href="#">Extras</a>   <a href="#">Extra</a> " for more information on this.
<b>center</b>	(for UK children): Americans cannot spell "centre".

**Examples:**

```
div.center { text-align: center; }
```

As 'text-align' inherits, the above specifies that all [block-level](#) elements inside the `div` element with "class=center" will be centred. Alignments will be relative to the width of the element and not the canvas.


## text-decoration

**Syntax:** `text-decoration: <values>`

**Description:** `text-decoration` describes decorations that are added to the text of (any) element. If the element has no text (e.g. the `'img'` element) or is empty (e.g. `'<em></em>'`), it has no effect. A value of `'blink'` causes the text to blink.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

### Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>none</code>   [ <code>underline</code>    <code>overline</code>    <code>line-through</code>    <code>blink</code> ]
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No, but see <i>Extras</i> below
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

### Extras:

<b>Help + inheritance:</b>	<p>The colour(s) required for the text decoration should be derived from the <code>'color'</code> property value. Although not inherited, elements should match their parent.</p> <p>Example: if an element is underlined, the line should span the child elements. The colour of the underlining will remain the same even if descendant elements have different <code>'color'</code> values.</p>
<b>blink:</b>	You cannot imagine how much the Netscape-inspired <code>'blink'</code> attribute came to be hated. The W3C edict is: <i>"browsers must recognize the keyword 'blink', but are not required to support the blink effect"</i> (rather British).
<b>Examples:</b>	<code>underline</code> , <code>overline</code> , <del><code>line-through</code></del> , <code>blink</code> , <code>none</code> (default).

### Examples:

```
a:link, a:visited, a:active { text-decoration: underline;}
```

The above specifies, for all `a` elements with a `'href'` attribute, that they should be underlined.


## text-indent

**Syntax:** `text-indent: <values>`

**Description:** `text-indent` sets the indentation of the first formatted line of text within a **block-level** element. Negative values are allowed but there may be implementation-specific limits.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<a href="#">&lt;length&gt;</a>   <a href="#">&lt;percentage&gt;</a>
<b>Initial values:</b>	0
<b>% values:</b>	Refers to parent element's width
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Breaks:</b>	An indentation is NOT inserted in the middle of an element that was broken by another (such as <a href="#">br</a> )
----------------	---

**Examples:**

```
p { text-indent: 3em; }
```

The above specifies, for all **p** elements, that the first line of text should be indented by 3em.


# text-transform

**Syntax:** `text-transform: <values>`


**Description:** `text-transform` applies a classic set of character-transformations to text. The precise character-to-character swaps are language-dependent; Latin-1 & utf-8 should always work, but other encodings may not (browser dependent).

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

## Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>capitalize</code>   <code>uppercase</code>   <code>lowercase</code>   <code>none</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>none</code>
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

## Extras:

<b>Help:</b>	These are the transforms:  Capitalize   UPPERCASE   lowercase   none
<b>might not work:</b>	<p><a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows the browser to treat all values as 'none' for certain charsets:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. if not Latin-1  and</li> <li>2. if "languages for which the transformation is different from that specified by the case-conversion tables of Unicode".</li> </ol>

## Examples:

```
dt { text-transform: uppercase; }
```

The above specifies, for all `dt` elements, that all text should be UPPER-CASED.


## vertical-align

**Syntax:** vertical-align: <values>

**Description:** vertical-align affects the vertical positioning of the element. 'top' & 'bottom' are relative to the formatted line that the element is part of; other keywords are relative to the parent element.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	baseline   sub   super   top   text-top   middle   bottom   text-bottom   < <a href="#">percentage</a> >
<b>Initial values:</b>	baseline
<b>% values:</b>	Relative to the <a href="#">line-height</a> of the element itself (can be <0)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Inline</a> elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Help:</b>	Keyword effects (browsers can differ markedly):  baseline   <sub>sub</sub>   <sup>super</sup>   top   text-top   middle   bottom   text-bottom
<b>baseline:</b>	align the baseline of the element (or the bottom, if no element baseline) with the baseline of the parent
<b>sub:</b>	subscript the element
<b>super:</b>	superscript the element
<b>top:</b>	align element top with the tallest element on the line
<b>text-top:</b>	align element top with the top of the parent element's font
<b>middle:</b>	align element vertical-midpoint with baseline + 1/2 the parent x-height.
<b>bottom:</b>	align element bottom with the lowest element on the line
<b>text-bottom:</b>	align element bottom with the bottom of the parent element's font

**Examples:**

```
img { vertical-align: 50%; }
```

The above specifies, for all [img](#) elements, a mid-point vertical alignment.


## width

**Syntax:** width: <values>


**Description:** width is suggested to be used principally with replaced elements such as [img](#). The element will be scaled if necessary (see *Extras* below).

**See also:** [border](#), [clear](#), [float](#), [height](#), [margin](#), [padding](#), [width](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Box Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	< <a href="#">length</a> >   auto
<b>Initial values:</b>	auto
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	<a href="#">Block-level</a> and replaced elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	No
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>General:</b>	Both <a href="#">height</a> & <a href="#">width</a> are considered together to find a replaced element's eventual dimensions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">height</a> = 'auto'; <a href="#">width</a> = 'auto': set to intrinsic dimensions of element</li> <li>• <a href="#">height</a> = 'auto'; <a href="#">width</a> = &lt;<a href="#">length</a>&gt;: <a href="#">width</a> enforced by scaling, aspect ratio preserved</li> <li>• <a href="#">height</a> = &lt;<a href="#">length</a>&gt;; <a href="#">width</a> = 'auto': <a href="#">height</a> enforced by scaling, aspect ratio preserved</li> <li>• <a href="#">height</a> = &lt;<a href="#">length</a>&gt;; <a href="#">width</a> = &lt;<a href="#">length</a>&gt;: enforced by scaling, aspect ratio ignored</li> </ul>
<b><a href="#">CSS1 Core</a> </b>	Browsers may ignore <a href="#">width</a> (treat it as 'auto') if the element is not a replaced element.

**Examples:**

```
img.icon { width: 100px }
```

The above specifies, for all [img](#) elements declared with a class of 'icon', that they will be displayed at a width of 100 pixels (note how that could be an issue on a very high-density display device).




# white-space

**Syntax:** `white-space: <values>`


**Description:** `white-space` decides how whitespace inside the element will be handled: as per 'normal' (whitespace is collapsed); as per 'pre' (like the [HTML pre](#) element) or as per 'nowrap' (wrapping occurs only via [HTML br](#) elements).

**See also:** [display](#), [list-style](#), [list-style-image](#), [list-style-position](#), [list-style-type](#), [white-space](#)

## Properties:

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Classification Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	<code>normal</code>   <code>pre</code>   <code>nowrap</code>
<b>Initial values:</b>	<code>normal</code> (though also refer to <a href="#">HTML</a> element default)
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

## Extras:

<b>whitespace:</b>	<p>The following are all called 'whitespace' by <a href="#">HTML4</a>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>space</i> ('sp'): <a href="#">ascii: 0x0020</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 32</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x0020</a>;</li> <li><i>tab</i> ('tb'): <a href="#">ascii: 0x0009</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 9</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x0009</a>;</li> <li><i>form-feed</i> ('ff'): <a href="#">ascii: 0x000c</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 12</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x000c</a>;</li> <li><i>zero width space</i>: <a href="#">ascii: 0x200b</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 8,203</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x200b</a>;</li> <li><i>line-feed</i> ('lf'): <a href="#">ascii: 0x000a</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 10</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x000a</a>;</li> <li><i>carriage return</i> ('cr'): <a href="#">ascii: 0x000d</a>; <a href="#">decimal: 13</a>; <a href="#">entity: &amp;#x000d</a>;</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> other languages &amp; encodings contain other whitespace characters; the above are the only ones recognised by <a href="#">HTML4</a>.</p>
<b>'normal':</b>	Consecutive display-whitespace collapsed to a single space.
<b>'pre':</b>	Fixed-pitch font; no whitespace collapse; respect <code>tb</code> , <code>ff</code> , <code>lf</code> + <code>cr</code> .
<b>'nowrap':</b>	Turns OFF (normal) wrap-at-whitespace; also response to '&nbsp;';
<b><a href="#">CSS1 Core</a> :</b>	Browsers may ignore <code>white-space</code> and use only defaults.

## Examples:

```
pre { white-space: pre; }
```

The above specifies, for [pre](#) elements, to **display preformatted**. (which is also the default for text within [pre](#) elements).


## word-spacing

**Syntax:** word-spacing: <values>


**Description:** word-spacing sets an addition to the default space between words. Negative values are allowed but can hit implementation-limits. Do not use this & [justification](#) together.

**See also:** [font](#), [letter-spacing](#), [line-height](#), [text-align](#), [text-decoration](#), [text-indent](#), [text-transform](#), [vertical-align](#), [word-spacing](#)

**Properties:**

<b>Group:</b>	<a href="#">Text Properties</a>
<b>Values:</b>	normal   <length>
<b>Initial values:</b>	normal
<b>% values:</b>	(n/a)
<b>Applies to:</b>	All elements
<b>Inherited?</b>	Yes
<b>Standard:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1</a> 

**Extras:**

<b>Extra:</b>	Word-spacing is an external function of the browser which depends upon the internal function of the font. See <a href="#">“letter-spacing   Extras   Extra”</a> for more information on this.
<b>normal:</b>	<a href="#">CSS1 Core conformance</a>  allows the browser to interpret any value of ‘word-spacing’ as ‘normal’.

**Examples:**

```
h1 { word-spacing: 1em; }
```

The above specifies, for all [h1](#) elements, that all contained text should have the word-spacing increased by 1em (the horizontal-space occupied by the letter ‘m’) ( w h i c h i s a l o t ! )

Ever since the day, as a young adolescent that loved cartoons, and I read a small cartoon in my father's *Daily Mirror*, which showed a chap in an office who had just opened one of the lower drawers in a filing cabinet and was looking down at it in shock, with the caption:

*"Good heavens, it's Miss Cellaneous"*

...I've loved the word *"Miscellany"*.

What follows now is a medley (*dictionary*: "a heterogenous mixture") of different css items, though strongly biased towards text display, simply because I also love typography & fonts.

# Quirks Mode

Most of the time you are going to want to avoid this within your webpages. To do so is fairly simple:

*To avoid:* Include a [DOCTYPE declaration](#) above every HTML document.

And yes: it really is as simple as that (although also read the following links). As to how & why ‘Quirks mode’ originated, and what it means in practice, that is a *very* long & tortuous tale which I’m not going to try to reproduce in full here – it will just be the headlines.

*Read More:*

- <http://www.quirksmode.org/css/quirksmode.html> (scroll halfway down to find some useful test pages)
- <http://www.cs.tut.fi/~jkorpela/quirks-mode.html>

*What it causes:*

In a sentence, it causes MSIE (Internet Explorer) to behave the same in it’s page-layout as Internet Explorer 5.5, and most other browsers to behave the same as Netscape 4 (released in 1997), each of which had horribly broken css support; moreover, broken in different ways to each other).

*Why?:*

At the point of release of their v4 web-browsers in 1997, Netscape & Microsoft were the providers of the two main methods used by the world to access the Internet: it was either “*Netscape 4*” or “*Internet Explorer 4*”. Each company was also engaged in a war to gain control of the Desktop and, in particular, of the Browser. Their focus was upon each other rather than upon their users. Their implementation of the newly-available css was each buggy in the extreme (neither conformed 100% to the W3C standard). Web authors had to choose to design for one browser or the other.

Later, conformance to web-standards became an issue that all browser manufacturers agreed that they had to pay attention to. Yet, because of the earlier history, the many millions of web-pages on the Internet either had no css, or had css that was largely non-standard. ‘Quirks mode’ was an attempt by those manufacturers to try to support those old pages whilst providing standards-compliance for new pages.

One curiosity of the [DOCTYPE declaration](#) is that it does not appear within any of the formal HTML standards, yet is mentioned within the comments of all of the DTDS. Microsoft started switching mode with MSIE 5 on the Mac, and then with MSIE 6 on all platforms, and all other browsers followed suit. If the top of the HTML contains a DOCTYPE then the rendering mode is ‘Strict’ (“*Standards compliance mode*”), else it is Quirky. Meanwhile, MSIE 5.5 Windows + Netscape 4 (and earlier) are in permanent *Quirks* mode.

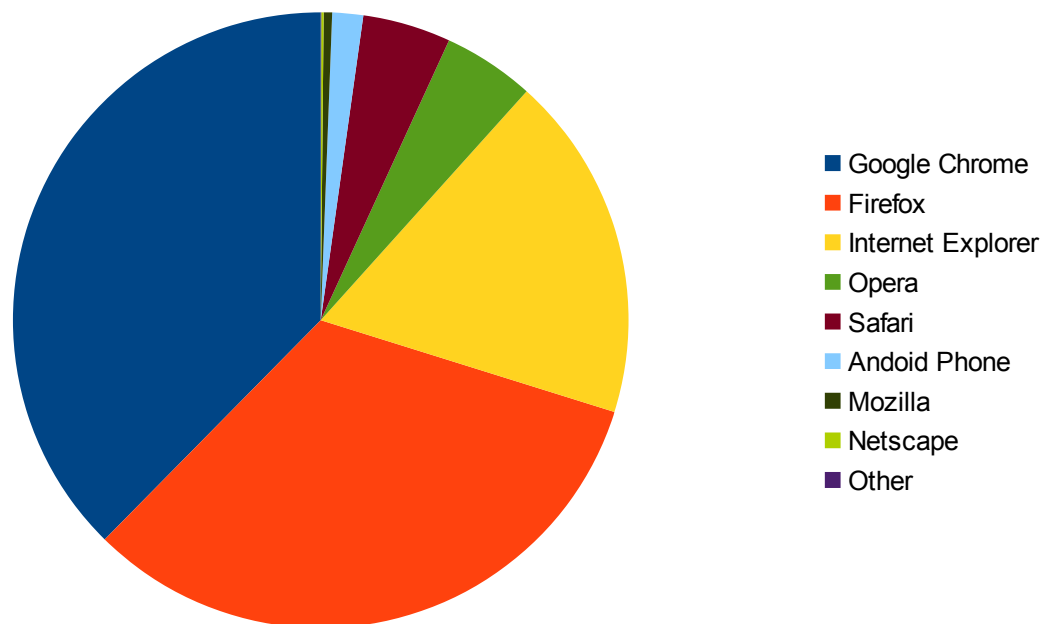
### The picture today:

With the earlier mention of the “*Browser Wars*” (it flared up near the end of the last millenium, and near the start had Netscape & Microsoft essentially sharing the browser market 50:50), I thought that you may be interested to see a snapshot of the web browsers used by humans today ([drawn from my own website](#), so not necessarily typical across the web):

### Browser Use for Modem-Help, UK; October 2013

Grand total = 100%

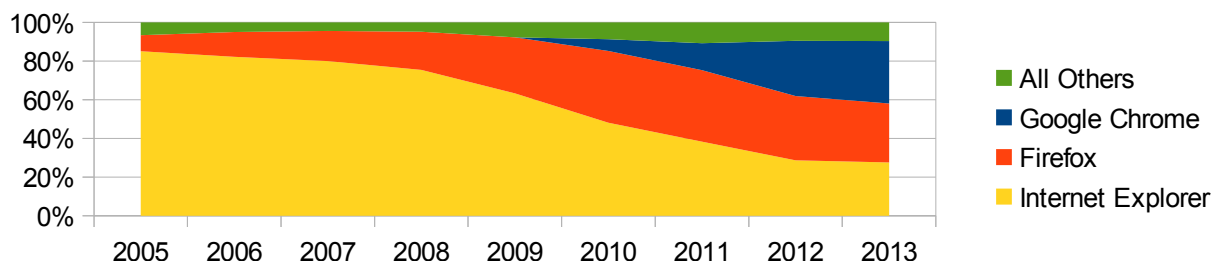
(individual totals are for all versions of that browser)



1. Google Chrome:	37.62%
2. Firefox:	32.56%
3. Internet Explorer	18.15%
4. Opera:	4.83%
5. Safari	4.63%
6. Android Phone	1.61%
7. Mozilla	0.44%
8. Netscape	0.13%
9. Other	0.03%

### Microsoft Internet Explorer:

• January 2013:	27.46%
• January 2012:	30.78%
• January 2011:	37.10%
• January 2010:	48.10%






## Column Layouts, css1

The bottom line for this is, in my personal view, not to bother. I spent 7 days in 2003, 18 hours a day, trying my best to produce a css1-only file; I discovered in the process that css1 is not fit for purpose – a deeply frustrating experience, particularly as I had fully committed to the principle of the separation of style from content that is at the heart of css. However, I had a new site to construct & zero income until it appeared...

Using a top-level table made page-layout a doddle to accomplish, and it was consistent across all browsers. Trying to do the same using pure css1 required non-standard hacks; worse, those hacks would need updating with each new version release from one or another Browser. It was a Gordian Knot of epic & growing proportions, and using tables was the sword that solved them all in one fell (and foul) swoop.

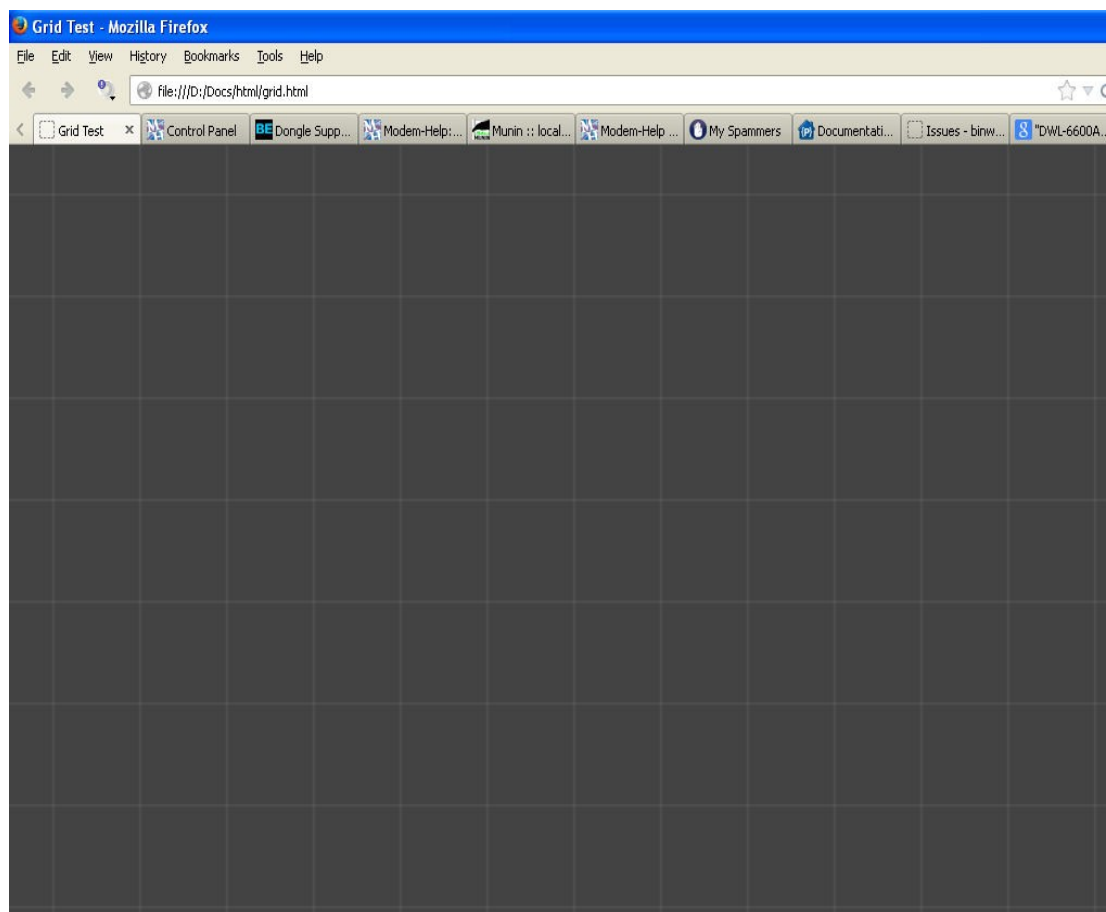
You will understand from the previous paragraphs, therefore, that I consider the following links of historical interest only (I researched them fresh in November 2013, and found the same links as in 2003):

- [Little Boxes](#)   
A plethora of different layouts from Owen Briggs (marvellous design)
- [Blue Robot Layouts](#) 
- [glish.com](#)   
Warning! Broken .asp pages!

## Text grids using only css

A background grid pattern on the page is mighty useful for testing purposes whilst designing your pages, and especially for text layout. The usual way of doing this pre-css was to use specially-made *.gif* files attached to the `body` element using the 'background' property, but that is just so last millenium.

The picture of the webpage below uses css3 properties to achieve a pure-css grid (the HTML, which includes embedded css, is below it). Any modern browser should show it fine (the pic is of Firefox 24.0). Other pages on text within this miscellany use the identical css.



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
  <head>
    <title>Grid Test</title>
    <style type="text/css">
      html {
        height: 100%;
      }
      body {
        margin: 0;
        padding: 0;
        height: 100%;
        background-color: #434343;
        /* background-image: linear-gradient(#434343, #282828); */
        color: white;
        font: 100pt/120pt serif;
      }
      #content{
        background-color: transparent;
        background-image: linear-gradient(0deg, transparent 24%, rgba(255,
255, 255, .05) 25%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05) 26%, transparent 27%,
transparent 74%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05) 75%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05)
76%, transparent 77%, transparent), linear-gradient(90deg, transparent
24%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05) 25%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05) 26%,
transparent 27%, transparent 74%, rgba(255, 255, 255, .05) 75%, rgba(255,
255, 255, .05) 76%, transparent 77%, transparent);
        margin: 0;
        padding: 0;
        height: 100%;
        background-size: 120pt 120pt;
        padding-top: 55pt;
      }
    </style>
  </head>
  <body>
    <div id=content></div>
  </body>
</html>
```

There are two keys to getting text to line-up upon the grid, so that the text **baseline** sits upon a gridline:

1. **background-size** (within '#content')  
Both x & y need to be set to the same size as the font **line-height**
2. **padding-top** (within '#content')  
This needs a small calculation.

To help you understand it, first recall that css places the text centrally within the **line-box**, and that effectively means that half the leading is added *above* & half added *below* the text. Next, recall that the **leading** is the difference between the line-height & the font height (which is the font-size). Finally, recall that when a font is described as "100pt/120pt", that means "**font-size/line-height**", (there are 72 points in an inch (2.54cm)).

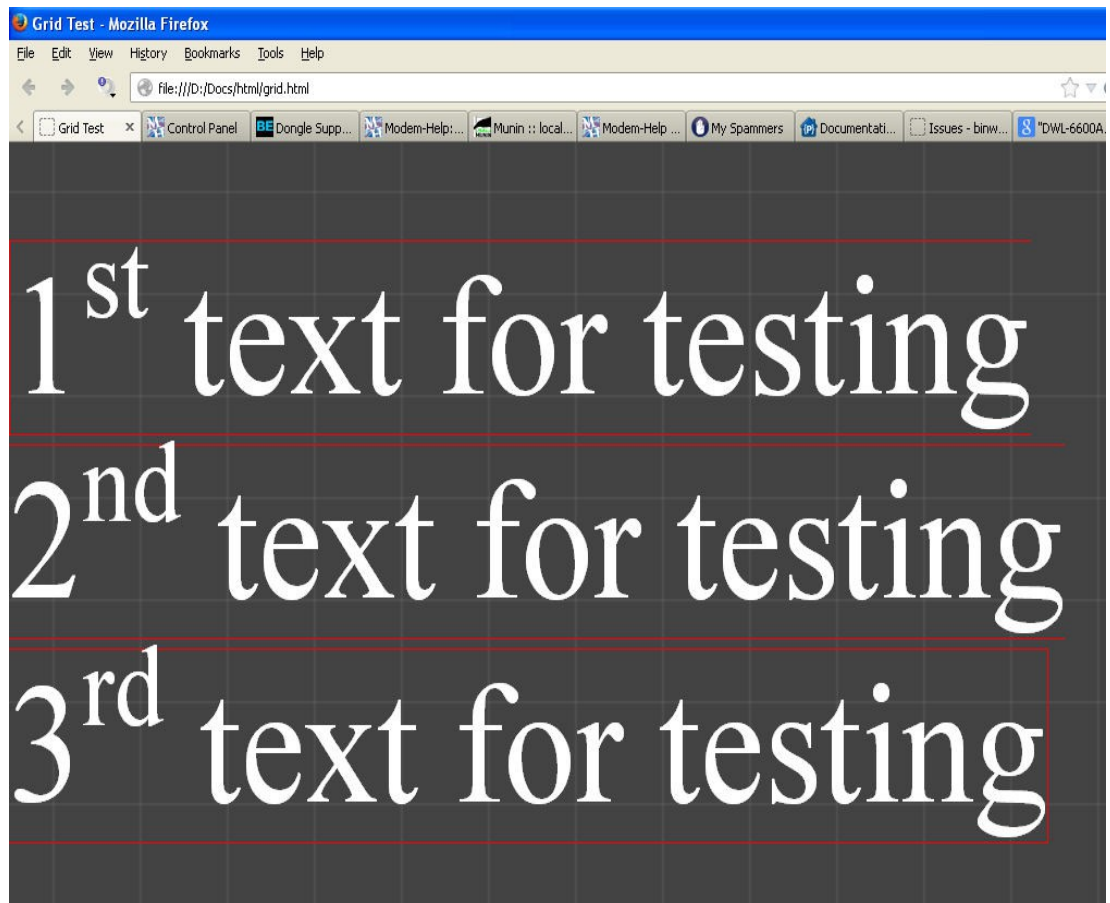
The effect of top padding is to push the content (but not the background) down. The amount required here is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} * (\text{font-size} + (\frac{1}{2} * \text{leading})) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} * (100\text{pt} + (\frac{1}{2} * 20\text{pt})) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} * 110\text{pt} \\
 &= 55\text{pt}
 \end{aligned}$$



## Accurate Superscript & Subscripts

Using either the HTML `sup` and/or `sub` will make a dog's dinner of your carefully-crafted text pages (examples later). Unfortunately, using CSS “`vertical-align=super`” and/or “`vertical-align=sub`” on their own will do exactly the same. In this instance, both the W3C *and* the browser designers have conspired together to achieve that. Here's how to do it right:



the CSS:

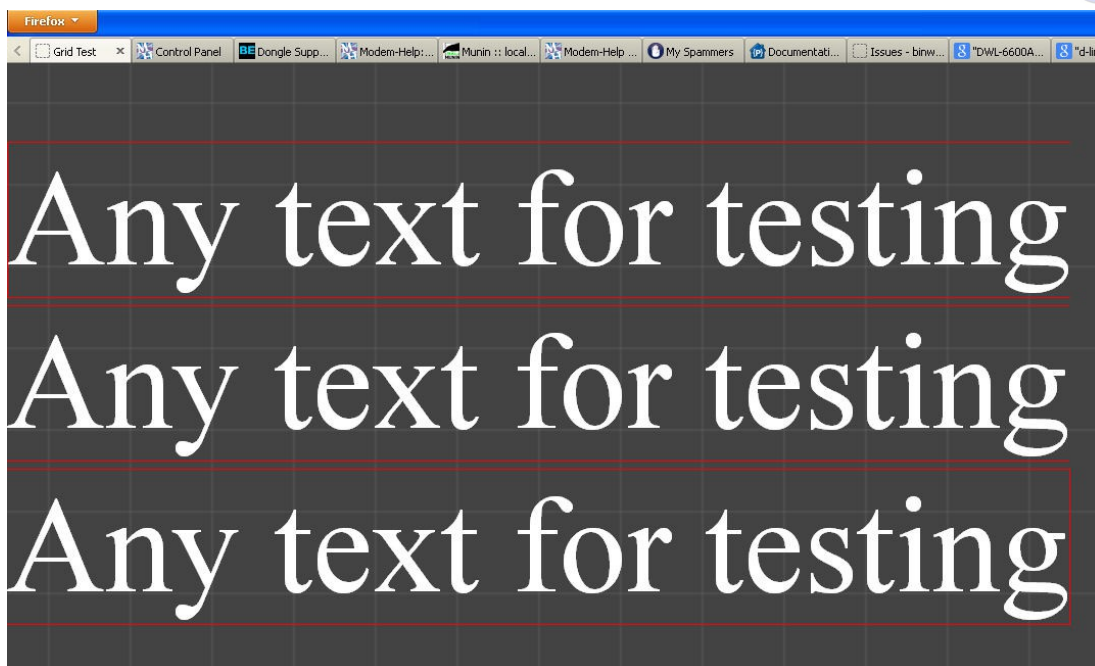
```
sup {
  font-size: 68%;
  line-height: 68%
}
```

the HTML:

```
<body><div id=content><span style="border: thin solid red;">
  1<sup>st</sup> text for testing<br />
  2<sup>nd</sup> text for testing<br />
  3<sup>rd</sup> text for testing
</span></div></body>
```

The above uses a CSS `text-grid`. It all looks perfectly normal, until you see the havoc that will ensue otherwise (and you will then also understand the reason for the red border box) (next pages):

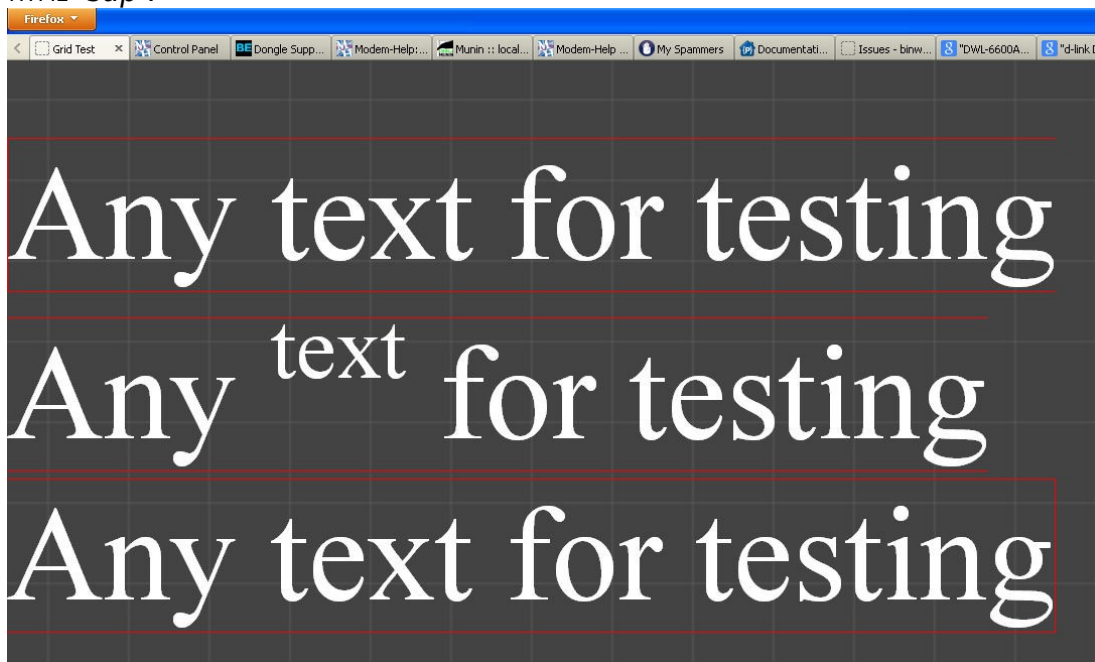
Here is some text using a [css text-grid](#). The earlier css for [sup](#) is now missing, so this is default browser formatting from now on (Firefox 24.0):



the HTML:

```
<body><div id=content><span style="border: thin solid red;">  
  Any text for testing<br />  
  Any text for testing<br />  
  Any text for testing  
</span></div></body>
```

The effect of HTML 'sup':



the HTML:

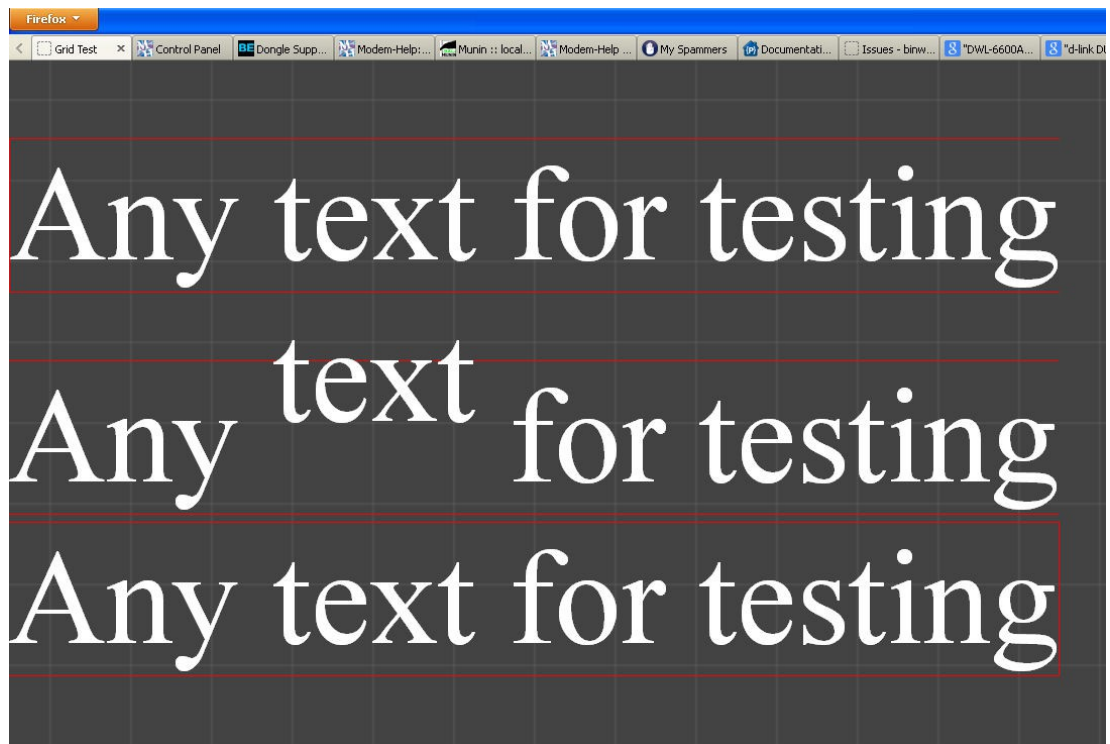
```
<body><div id=content><span style="border: thin solid red;">  
  Any text for testing<br />  
  Any <sup>text</sup> for testing<br />  
  Any text for testing  
</span></div></body>
```

If you look closely, you will see that the browser has shrunk 'text' & raised it into superscript position. Unfortunately, in the process it has pushed down the rest of the text-line, so that neither it nor the last line of text sit upon their original baselines any more (only the top line is unaffected).

Imagine if you had 2 adjacent columns of text; following the superscript, the lines of text would be out of kilter, and the whole page would look most unprofessional.

*The effect of css 'vertical-align: super':*

You would hope that css formatting would fix the above; if anything, it is worse (and also shows that the Firefox designers may be ignoring the W3C guidelines for [line-box formatting](#)):



*the HTML:*

```
<body><div id=content><span style="border: thin solid red;">  
  Any text for testing<br />  
  Any <span style="vertical-align: super;">text</span> for testing<br />  
  Any text for testing  
</span></div></body>
```

Look closely, and you will see that the middle 'text' is upon its original baseline, whilst the rest of the text-line has been dropped until 'text' is in superscript position with regard to the rest of the text-line. *Gordon Bennett! Wot a brain-dead way of arranging matters!* Well, whatever their reasons for doing things that way, they have ensured that the entire page will just look silly.

## Google Guidelines for HTML & CSS

The words below come from a [document](#) obtained on 6 October 2013, and saved as plain-text. It is guidelines issued by Google to its minions on usage of HTML + CSS within collaborative projects. I thought that it had some useful things to say, and that folks reading this PDF may also find it useful.

### Revision 2.23:

This style guide contains many details that are initially hidden from view. They are marked by the triangle icon, which you see here on your left. Click it now. You should see “Hooray” appear below.

Hooray! Now you know you can expand points to get more details. Alternatively, there’s a “toggle all” at the top of this document.

### Purpose:

This document defines formatting and style rules for HTML and CSS. It aims at improving collaboration, code quality, and enabling supporting infrastructure. It applies to raw, working files that use HTML and CSS, including GSS files. Tools are free to obfuscate, minify, and compile as long as the general code quality is maintained.

### Omit the protocol from embedded resources:

Omit the protocol portion (|http:|, |https:|) from URLs pointing to images and other media files, style sheets, and scripts unless the respective files are not available over both protocols.

Omitting the protocol—which makes the URL relative—prevents mixed content issues and results in minor file size savings.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <script
src="http://www.google.com/js/gweb/analytics/autotrack.js"></script>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <script
src="//www.google.com/js/gweb/analytics/autotrack.js"></script>
```

```
/* Not recommended */ .example { background:
url(http://www.google.com/images/example); }
```

```
/* Recommended */ .example { background:
url(//www.google.com/images/example); }
```

### Indent by 2 spaces at a time:

Don’t use tabs or mix tabs and spaces for indentation.

### Use only lowercase:

All code has to be lowercase: This applies to HTML element names, attributes, attribute values (unless |text/CDATA|), CSS selectors, properties, and property values (with the exception of strings).

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <A HREF="/">Home</A>

<!-- Recommended --> 

/* Not recommended */ color: #E5E5E5;

/* Recommended */ color: #e5e5e5;
```

### *Remove trailing white spaces:*

Trailing white spaces are unnecessary and can complicate diffs.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <p>What?_

<!-- Recommended --> <p>Yes please.
```

### *Use UTF-8 (no BOM):*

Make sure your editor uses UTF-8 as character encoding, without a byte order mark.

Specify the encoding in HTML templates and documents via |  
<meta charset="utf-8">|. Do not specify the encoding of style sheets as these  
assume UTF-8.

(More on encodings and when and how to specify them can be found in  
Handling character encodings in HTML and CSS  
<<http://www.w3.org/International/tutorials/tutorial-char-enc/>>.)

### *Explain code as needed, where possible:*

Use comments to explain code: What does it cover, what purpose does it  
serve, why is respective solution used or preferred?

(This item is optional as it is not deemed a realistic expectation to always  
demand fully documented code. Mileage may vary heavily for HTML and CSS  
code and depends on the project's complexity.)

### *Mark todos and action items with |TODO|:*

Highlight todos by using the keyword |TODO| only, not other common  
formats like |@@|.

Append a contact (username or mailing list) in parentheses as with the  
format |TODO(contact)|.

Append action items after a colon as in |TODO: action item|.

```
{# TODO(john.doe): revisit centering #} <center>Test</center>
<!-- TODO: remove optional tags --> <ul> <li>Apples</li> <li>Oranges</li>
</ul>
```

### *Use HTML5:*

HTML5 (HTML syntax) is preferred for all HTML documents:  
|<!DOCTYPE html>|.

(It's recommended to use HTML, as |text/html|. Do not use XHTML.  
XHTML, as |application/xhtml+xml| <<http://hixie.ch/advocacy/xhtml/>>, lacks both browser and infrastructure support and offers less room for  
optimization than HTML.)

Although fine with HTML, do not close void elements, i.e. write `<br>`, not `<br />`.

### *Use valid HTML where possible:*

Use valid HTML code unless that is not possible due to otherwise unattainable performance goals regarding file size.

Use tools such as the W3C HTML validator <http://validator.w3.org/nu/> to test.

Using valid HTML is a measurable baseline quality attribute that contributes to learning about technical requirements and constraints, and that ensures proper HTML usage.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <title>Test</title> <article>This is only a test.
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <!DOCTYPE html> <meta charset="utf-8">
<title>Test</title> <article>This is only a test.</article>
```

### *Use HTML according to its purpose:*

Use elements (sometimes incorrectly called “tags”) for what they have been created for. For example, use heading elements for headings, `|p|` elements for paragraphs, `|a|` elements for anchors, etc.

Using HTML according to its purpose is important for accessibility, reuse, and code efficiency reasons.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <div onclick="goToRecommendations();">All
recommendations</div>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <a href="recommendations/">All recommendations</a>
```

### *Provide alternative contents for multimedia:*

For multimedia, such as images, videos, animated objects via `|canvas|`, make sure to offer alternative access. For images that means use of meaningful alternative text (`|alt|`) and for video and audio transcripts and captions, if available.

Providing alternative contents is important for accessibility reasons: A blind user has few cues to tell what an image is about without `|@alt|`, and other users may have no way of understanding what video or audio contents are about either.

(For images whose `|alt|` attributes would introduce redundancy, and for images whose purpose is purely decorative which you cannot immediately use CSS for, use no alternative text, as in `|alt=""|`.)

```
<!-- Not recommended --> 
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> 
```



### *Separate structure from presentation from behavior:*

Strictly keep structure (markup), presentation (styling), and behavior (scripting) apart, and try to keep the interaction between the three to an absolute minimum.

That is, make sure documents and templates contain only HTML and HTML that is solely serving structural purposes. Move everything presentational into style sheets, and everything behavioral into scripts.

In addition, keep the content area as small as possible by linking as few style sheets and scripts as possible from documents and templates.

Separating structure from presentation from behavior is important for maintenance reasons. It is always more expensive to change HTML documents and templates than it is to update style sheets and scripts.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <!DOCTYPE html> <title>HTML sucks</title> <link
rel="stylesheet" href="base.css" media="screen"> <link rel="stylesheet"
href="grid.css" media="screen"> <link rel="stylesheet" href="print.css"
media="print"> <h1 style="font-size: 1em;">HTML sucks</h1> <p>I've read
about this on a few sites but now I'm sure: <u>HTML is stupid!!</u>
<center>I can't believe there's no way to control the styling of my website
without doing everything all over again!</center>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <!DOCTYPE html> <title>My first CSS-only
redesign</title> <link rel="stylesheet" href="default.css"> <h1>My first
CSS-only redesign</h1> <p>I've read about this on a few sites but today I'm
actually doing it: separating concerns and avoiding anything in the HTML of
my website that is presentational. <p>It's awesome!
```

### *Do not use entity references:*

There is no need to use entity references like `|&mdash;|`, `|&rdquo;|`, or `|&#x263a;|`, assuming the same encoding (UTF-8) is used for files and editors as well as among teams.

The only exceptions apply to characters with special meaning in HTML (like `<|` and `|&|`) as well as control or “invisible” characters (like no-break spaces).

```
<!-- Not recommended --> The currency symbol for the Euro is
&ldquo;&eur;&rdquo;.
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> The currency symbol for the Euro is "€".
```

### *Omit optional tags (optional):*

For file size optimization and scannability purposes, consider omitting optional tags. The HTML5 specification <http://www.whatwg.org/specs....html#syntax-tag-omission> defines what tags can be omitted.

(This approach may require a grace period to be established as a wider guideline as it's significantly different from what web developers are typically taught. For consistency and simplicity reasons it's best served omitting all optional tags, not just a selection.)

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <!DOCTYPE html> <html> <head> <title>Spending
money, spending bytes</title> </head> <body> <p>Sic.</p> </body> </html>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <!DOCTYPE html> <title>Saving money, saving
bytes</title> <p>Qed.
```

### *Omit |type| attributes for style sheets and scripts:*

Do not use |type| attributes for style sheets (unless not using CSS) and scripts (unless not using JavaScript).

Specifying |type| attributes in these contexts is not necessary as HTML5 implies |text/css| <http://www.whatwg.org/specs...html#attr-style-type> and |text/javascript| <http://www.whatwg.org/sp...html#attr-script-type> as defaults. This can be safely done even for older browsers.

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <link rel="stylesheet"
href="//www.google.com/css/maia.css" type="text/css">
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <link rel="stylesheet"
href="//www.google.com/css/maia.css">
```

```
<!-- Not recommended --> <script
src="//www.google.com/js/gweb/analytics/autotrack.js"
type="text/javascript"></script>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <script
src="//www.google.com/js/gweb/analytics/autotrack.js"></script>
```

### *Use a new line for every block, list, or table element, and indent every such child element:*

Independent of the styling of an element (as CSS allows elements to assume a different role per |display| property), put every block, list, or table element on a new line.

Also, indent them if they are child elements of a block, list, or table element.

(If you run into issues around whitespace between list items it's acceptable to put all |li| elements in one line. A linter is encouraged to throw a warning instead of an error.)

```
<blockquote>
  <p><em>Space</em>, the final frontier.</p>
</blockquote>
<ul>
  <li>Moe <li>Larry <li>Curly
</ul>
<table>
  <thead>
    <tr>
      <th scope="col">Income
      <th scope="col">Taxes
    </tr>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>$ 5.00
      <td>$4.50
    </td>
  </tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

### *When quoting attributes values, use double quotation marks:*

Use double (|""|) rather than single quotation marks (|' '|) around attribute values.



```
<!-- Not recommended --> <a class='maia-button maia-button-secondary'>Sign in</a>
```

```
<!-- Recommended --> <a class="maia-button maia-button-secondary">Sign in</a>
```

### *Use valid CSS where possible:*

Unless dealing with CSS validator bugs or requiring proprietary syntax, use valid CSS code.

Use tools such as the W3C CSS validator

<<http://jigsaw.w3.org/css-validator/>> to test.

Using valid CSS is a measurable baseline quality attribute that allows to spot CSS code that may not have any effect and can be removed, and that ensures proper CSS usage.

### *Use meaningful or generic ID and class names:*

Instead of presentational or cryptic names, always use ID and class names that reflect the purpose of the element in question, or that are otherwise generic.

Names that are specific and reflect the purpose of the element should be preferred as these are most understandable and the least likely to change.

Generic names are simply a fallback for elements that have no particular or no meaning different from their siblings. They are typically needed as “helpers.”

Using functional or generic names reduces the probability of unnecessary document or template changes.

```
/* Not recommended: meaningless */ #yee-1901 {}
```

```
/* Not recommended: presentational */ .button-green {} .clear {}
```

```
/* Recommended: specific */ #gallery {} #login {} .video {}
```

```
/* Recommended: generic */ .aux {} .alt {}
```

### *Use ID and class names that are as short as possible but as long as necessary:*

Try to convey what an ID or class is about while being as brief as possible.

Using ID and class names this way contributes to acceptable levels of understandability and code efficiency.

```
/* Not recommended */ #navigation {} .atr {} /*
```

```
Recommended */ #nav {} .author {}
```

### *Avoid qualifying ID and class names with type selectors:*

Unless necessary (for example with helper classes), do not use element names in conjunction with IDs or classes.

Avoiding unnecessary ancestor selectors is useful for performance reasons <<http://www.stevesouders.com/blog/...simplifying-css-selectors/>>.

```
/* Not recommended */ ul#example {} div.error {}

/* Recommended */ #example {} .error {}
```

### *Use shorthand properties where possible:*

CSS offers a variety of shorthand

<<http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/about.html#shorthand>> properties (like |font|) that should be used whenever possible, even in cases where only one value is explicitly set.

Using shorthand properties is useful for code efficiency and understandability.

```
/* Not recommended */ border-top-style: none; font-family: palatino,
georgia, serif; font-size: 100%; line-height: 1.6; padding-bottom: 2em;
padding-left: 1em; padding-right: 1em; padding-top: 0;

/* Recommended */ border-top: 0; font: 100%/1.6 palatino, georgia, serif;
padding: 0 1em 2em;
```

### *Omit unit specification after "0" values:*

Do not use units after |0| values unless they are required.

```
margin: 0; padding: 0;
```

### *Omit leading "0"s in values:*

Do not use put |0|s in front of values or lengths between -1 and 1.

```
font-size: .8em;
```

### *Use 3 character hexadecimal notation where possible:*

For color values that permit it, 3 character hexadecimal notation is shorter and more succinct.

```
/* Not recommended */ color: #eebbcc; /*
Recommended */ color: #ebc;
```

### *Prefix selectors with an application-specific prefix (optional):*

In large projects as well as for code that gets embedded in other projects or on external sites use prefixes (as namespaces) for ID and class names. Use short, unique identifiers followed by a dash.

Using namespaces helps preventing naming conflicts and can make maintenance easier, for example in search and replace operations.

```
.adw-help {} /* AdWords */
#maia-note {} /* Maia */
```

### *Separate words in ID and class names by a hyphen:*

Do not concatenate words and abbreviations in selectors by any characters (including none at all) other than hyphens, in order to improve understanding and scannability.

```
/* Not recommended: does not separate the words "demo" and "image" */
.demoimage {}
/* Not recommended: uses underscore instead of hyphen */ .error_status {}

/* Recommended */ #video-id {} .ads-sample {}
```

### *Avoid user agent detection as well as CSS “hacks”—try a different approach first:*

It's tempting to address styling differences over user agent detection or special CSS filters, workarounds, and hacks. Both approaches should be considered last resort in order to achieve and maintain an efficient and manageable code base. Put another way, giving detection and hacks a free pass will hurt projects in the long run as projects tend to take the way of least resistance. That is, allowing and making it easy to use detection and hacks means using detection and hacks more frequently—and more frequently is too frequently.

### *Alphabetize declarations:*

Put declarations in alphabetical order in order to achieve consistent code in a way that is easy to remember and maintain.

Ignore vendor-specific prefixes for sorting purposes. However, multiple vendor-specific prefixes for a certain CSS property should be kept sorted (e.g. -moz prefix comes before -webkit).

```
background: fuchsia;
border: 1px solid;
-moz-border-radius: 4px;
-webkit-border-radius: 4px;

border-radius: 4px;
color: black;
text-align: center;
text-indent: 2em;
```

### *Indent all block content:*

Indent all block content

<<http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#block>>, that is rules within rules as well as declarations, so to reflect hierarchy and improve understanding.

```
@media screen, projection {
  html {
    background: #fff;
    color: #444;
  }
}
```

### *Use a semicolon after every declaration:*

End every declaration with a semicolon for consistency and extensibility reasons.

```
/* Not recommended */ .test { display: block; height: 100px }

/* Recommended */ .test { display: block; height: 100px; }
```

### *Use a space after a property name's colon:*

Always use a single space between property and value (but no space between property and colon) for consistency reasons.

```
/* Not recommended */ h3 { font-weight:bold; }

/* Recommended */ h3 {font-weight: bold; }
```

### *Use a space between the last selector and the declaration block:*

Always use a single space between the last selector and the opening brace that begins the declaration block

<<http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#rule-sets>>.

The opening brace should be on the same line as the last selector in a given rule.

```
/* Not recommended: missing space */
#video{
    margin-top: 1em;
}

/* Not recommended: unnecessary line break */
#video
{
    margin-top: 1em;
} /*

Recommended */
#video {
    margin-top: 1em;
}
```

### *Separate selectors and declarations by new lines:*

Always start a new line for each selector and declaration.

```
/* Not recommended */
a:focus, a:active {
    position: relative; top: 1px;
}

/* Recommended */
h1, h2, h3 {
    font-weight: normal;
    line-height: 1.2;
}
```

### *Separate rules by new lines:*

Always put a blank line (two line breaks) between rules.

```
html {
    background: #fff;
}

body {
    margin: auto;
    width: 50%;
}
```

### *Use single quotation marks for attribute selectors and property values:*

Use single (|'|) rather than double (|""|) quotation marks for attribute selectors or property values.

### *Do not use quotation marks in URI values (|url()|):*

Exception: If you do need to use the |@charset| rule, use double quotation marks—single quotation marks are not permitted

<<http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#charset>>.

```
/* Not recommended */
@import url("//www.google.com/css/maia.css");
html {
    font-family: "open sans", arial, sans-serif;
}

/* Recommended */
@import url(//www.google.com/css/maia.css);
html {
    font-family: 'open sans', arial, sans-serif;
}
```

### *Group sections by a section comment (optional):*

If possible, group style sheet sections together by using comments. Separate sections with new lines.

```
/* Header */
#adw-header {}
/* Footer */
#adw-footer {}
/* Gallery */
.adw-gallery {}
```

### */Be consistent./*

If you're editing code, take a few minutes to look at the code around you and determine its style. If they use spaces around all their arithmetic operators, you should too. If their comments have little boxes of hash marks around them, make your comments have little boxes of hash marks around them too.

The point of having style guidelines is to have a common vocabulary of coding so people can concentrate on what you're saying rather than on how you're saying it. We present global style rules here so people know the vocabulary, but local style is also important. If code you add to a file looks drastically different from the existing code around it, it throws readers out of their rhythm when they go to read it. Avoid this.

Revision 2.23